

Chapter 1

Matthew 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set a quotation from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this for the quoted material in 1:23.

Special concepts in this chapter

Genealogy

A genealogy is a list that records a person's ancestors or descendants. Jews used genealogies to choose the right man to become king. They did this because only a son of a king could become king. Most important people had records of their genealogies.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Use of the passive voice

Matthew uses the passive voice very purposefully in this chapter to indicate that Mary did not have a sexual relationship with anyone. She became pregnant with Jesus because the Holy Spirit performed a miracle. Many languages do not have a passive voice, so translators in those languages must find other ways to present the same truths.

Matthew 1:1

General Information:

The author begins with Jesus's genealogy in order to show that he is a descendant of King David and of Abraham. The genealogy continues through Matthew 1:16.

The book of the genealogy of Jesus Christ

You could translate this as a complete sentence.

Alternate translation: "This is the list of the ancestors of Jesus Christ"

Jesus Christ, son of David, son of Abraham

There were many generations between Jesus, David, and Abraham. Here "son" means "descendant."

Alternate translation: "Jesus Christ, a descendant of David, who was a descendant of Abraham"

son of David

Sometimes the phrase "son of David" is used as a title, but here it seems to be used only to identify Jesus's ancestry.

Matthew 1:2

Abraham was the father of Isaac

"Abraham became the father of Isaac" or "Abraham had a son Isaac" or "Abraham had a son named Isaac."

There are different ways you could translate this. Whichever way you translate it here, it would be best to translate it the same way throughout the list of Jesus's ancestors.

Isaac the father ... Jacob the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Isaac was the father ... Jacob was the father"

Matthew 1:3

Perez ... Zerah ... Hezron ... Ram

These are names of men.

Perez the father ... Hezron the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Perez was the father ... Hezron was the father"

Matthew 1:4

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

Amminadab the father ... Nahshon the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Amminadab was the father ... Nahshon was the father"

Matthew 1:5

Salmon was the father of Boaz by Rahab

"Salmon was the father of Boaz, and Boaz's mother was Rahab" or "Salmon and Rahab were the parents of Boaz"

Boaz the father ... Obed the father

Here the word "was" is understood. Alternate translation: "Boaz was the father ... Obed was the father"

Boaz the father of Obed by Ruth

"Boaz was the father of Obed, and Obed's mother was Ruth" or "Boaz and Ruth were the parents of Obed"

Matthew 1:6

David was the father of Solomon by the wife of Uriah

"David was the father of Solomon, and Solomon's mother was Uriah's wife" or "David and the wife of Uriah were the parents of Solomon"

the wife of Uriah

"the widow of Uriah." Solomon was born after Uriah died.

Matthew 1:7

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

Rehoboam the father of Abijah, Abijah the father of Asa

The word "was" is understood in both of these phrases. Alternate translation: "Rehoboam was the father of Abijah, and Abijah was the father of Asa"

Matthew 1:8

Joram

This man was called both Joram and Jehoram in the Old Testament.

Matthew 1:9

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

Matthew 1:10

Amon

Sometimes this is translated "Amos."

Matthew 1:11

Josiah was an ancestor of Jechoniah

A more specific term for "ancestor" can also be used, particularly if the word "ancestor" would only be used for someone who lived before one's grandparents. Alternate translation: "Josiah was a grandfather of Jechoniah"

at the time of the deportation to Babylon

"when they were forced to move to Babylon" or "when the Babylonians conquered them and made them go live in Babylon." If your language needs to specify who went to Babylon, you could say "the Israelites" or "the Israelites who lived in Judah."

Babylon

Here this means the country of Babylon, not just the city of Babylon.

Matthew 1:12

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

After the deportation to Babylon

Use the same wording you used in Matthew 1:11.

Shealtiel was an ancestor of Zerubbabel

Shealtiel was Zerubbabel's grandfather.

Matthew 1:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 1:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 1:15

Connecting Statement:

This continues the genealogy of Jesus.

Matthew 1:16

Connecting Statement:

The author concludes Jesus's genealogy, which began in Matthew 1:1.

Mary, by whom Jesus was born

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary, who gave birth to Jesus"

who is called Christ

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom people call Christ"

Matthew 1:17

fourteen

"14"

deportation to Babylon

Use the same wording you used in Matthew 1:11.

Matthew 1:18

General Information:

This begins a new part of the story in which the author describes the events leading up to the birth of Jesus.

His mother, Mary, was engaged to marry Joseph

"His mother, Mary, was going to marry Joseph." Parents normally arranged the marriages of their children. Alternate translation: "The parents of Mary, the mother of Jesus, had promised her in marriage to Joseph"

His mother, Mary, was engaged

Translate in a way that makes it clear that Jesus was not already born when Mary was engaged to Joseph. Alternate translation: "Mary, who would be the mother of Jesus, was engaged"

before they came together

"before they got married." This may refer to Mary and Joseph sleeping together. Alternate translation: "before they had slept together"

she was found to be pregnant

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they realized that she was pregnant" or "it happened that she was pregnant"

to be pregnant

"to be carrying a child"

by the Holy Spirit

The power of the Holy Spirit had enabled Mary to have a baby before she had slept with a man.

Matthew 1:19

Joseph, her husband

Joseph had not married Mary yet, but when a man and woman promised to marry each other, Jews considered them husband and wife though they did not live together. Alternate translation: "Joseph, who was supposed to marry Mary"

to divorce her quietly

"to quietly cancel their plans to get married"

Matthew 1:20

As he thought

"As Joseph thought"

appeared to him in a dream

"came to him while Joseph was dreaming"

son of David

Here "son" means "descendant."

the one who is conceived in her is conceived by the Holy Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit caused Mary to become pregnant with this child"

Matthew 1:21

She will bear a son

Because God sent the angel, the angel knew the baby was a boy.

you will call his name

"you must name him" or "you must give him the name." This is a command.

for he will save

Translator may add a footnote that says "The name 'Jesus' means 'the Lord saves.'"

his people

This refers to the Jews.

Matthew 1:22

General Information:

The author quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's birth was according to scripture.

all this happened

The angel is no longer speaking. Matthew is now explaining the importance of what the angel said.

what was spoken by the Lord through the prophet
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"what the Lord told the prophet to write long ago"

the prophet
There were many prophets. Matthew was speaking of
Isaiah. Alternate translation: "the prophet Isaiah"

Matthew 1:23

Behold ... Immanuel
Here Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah.

Behold, the virgin
"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both
true and important: the virgin"

Immanuel
This is a male name.

Immanuel"—which being translated is "God with us."
This is not in the book of Isaiah. Matthew is explaining
the meaning of the name "Immanuel." You could
translate it as a separate sentence. Alternate
translation: "Immanuel." This name means 'God with
us.'"

Matthew 1:24

Connecting Statement:
The author concludes his description of the events
leading up to the birth of Jesus.

as the angel of the Lord commanded
The angel had told Joseph to take Mary as his wife and
to name the child Jesus.

he took her as his wife
"he married Mary"

Matthew 1:25

he did not know her
This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "he did not
have sexual relations with her"

to a son
"to a male baby" or "to her son." Make sure it is clear
that Joseph is not portrayed as the actual father.

Then he called his name Jesus
"Joseph named the child Jesus"

Chapter 2

Matthew 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 6 and 18, which is from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

"His star"

These words probably refer to a star that the learned men believed to be the sign of a new king of Israel. (See: sign)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Learned men"

English translations use many different words to translate this phrase. These words include "magi" and "wise men." These men could have been scientists or astrologers. If you can, you should translate this with the general words "learned men."

Matthew 2:1

General Information:

A new part of the story begins here and continues through the end of the chapter. Matthew tells about Herod's attempt to kill the new King of the Jews.

Bethlehem of Judea

"the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

in the days of Herod the king

"when Herod was king there"

Herod

This refers to Herod the Great.

learned men from the east

"men from the east who studied the stars"

from the east

"from a country far east of Judea"

Matthew 2:2

Where is he who was born King of the Jews?

The men knew from studying the stars that the one who would become king had been born. They were trying to learn where he was. Alternate translation: "A

baby who will become the king of the Jews has been born. Where is he?"

his star

They were not saying that the baby was the rightful owner of the star. Alternate translation: "the star that tells about him" or "the star that is associated with his birth"

in the east

"as it came up in the east" or "while we were in our country"

worship

Possible meanings are 1) they intended to worship the baby as divine, or 2) they wanted to honor him as a human king. If your language has a word that includes both meanings, you should consider using it here.

Matthew 2:3

he was troubled

"he was worried." Herod was worried that this baby would replace him as king.

all Jerusalem

Here "Jerusalem" refers to the people. Also, "all" means "many." Matthew is exaggerating to emphasize how

many people were worried. Alternate translation:
"many of the people in Jerusalem"

Matthew 2:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 2:5

In Bethlehem of Judea

"In the town of Bethlehem in the province of Judea"

this is what was written by the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"this is what the prophet wrote long ago"

Matthew 2:6

General Information:

The chief priests and scribes of the people quote the prophet Micah to show that the Christ would be born in Bethlehem.

you, Bethlehem, ... are not the least among the rulers of Judah
Micah was speaking to the people of Bethlehem as if they were with him but they were not. Also, "are not the least" can be translated with a positive phrase.
Alternate translation: "you, people of Bethlehem, ... your town is among the most important towns in Judah"

who will shepherd my people Israel

Micah speaks of this ruler as a shepherd. This means he will lead and care for the people. Alternate translation:
"who will lead my people Israel as a shepherd leads his sheep"

Matthew 2:7

Herod secretly called the learned men

This means that Herod talked to the learned men without other people knowing.

men to ask them exactly what time the star had appeared.

This can be translated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "men, and he asked them, 'When exactly did this star appear?'"

what time the star had appeared

It is implied that the learned men told him when the star appeared. Alternate translation: "what time the star had appeared. The learned men told Herod when the star first appeared"

Matthew 2:8

young child

This refers to Jesus.

bring me a report

"report back to me" or "let me know"

worship him

See how you translated this in Matthew 2:2.

Matthew 2:9

After they

"After the learned men"

they had seen in the east

"they had seen come up in the east" or "they had seen in their country"

went before them

"guided them" or "led them"

stood still over

"stopped over"

where the young child was

"the place where the young child was staying"

Matthew 2:10

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 2:11

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the house where Mary, Joseph, and the young Jesus were living.

They went

"The learned men went"

They fell down and worshiped him

"They knelt down and put their faces close to the ground." They did this to honor Jesus.

their treasures

Here "treasures" refers to the boxes or bags they used to carry their treasures. Alternate translation: "the containers that held their treasures"

Matthew 2:12

God warned them

"Afterwards, God warned the learned men." God knew that Herod wanted to harm the child.

dream not to return to Herod, so

This can be translated as a direct quotation. Alternate translation: "dream, saying, 'Do not go back to King Herod,' so"

Matthew 2:13

they had departed

"the learned men had departed"

appeared to Joseph in a dream

"came to Joseph while he was dreaming"

Get up, take ... flee ... Remain ... you

God is speaking to Joseph, so these should all be singular forms.

until I tell you

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "until I tell you it is safe to come back"

I tell you

Here "I" refers to God. The angel is speaking for God.

Matthew 2:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 2:15

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Hosea to show that the Christ would spend time in Egypt.

He remained

It is implied that Joseph, Mary, and Jesus remained in Egypt. Alternate translation: "They remained"

until the death of Herod

Herod does not die until Matthew 2:19. This statement describes the length of their stay in Egypt, and it does not say that Herod died at this time.

what had been spoken by the Lord through the prophet, saying

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord had said through the prophet; he had said" or "what the Lord had told the prophet to tell the people; he had said"

Out of Egypt I have called my Son

"I have called my Son out of Egypt"

my Son

In Hosea this refers to the people of Israel. Matthew quoted it to say that this was true of God's Son, Jesus. Translate it using a word for son that could refer to the only son or the first son.

Matthew 2:16

General Information:

These events happen before Herod's death, which Matthew mentioned in [Matthew 2:15]

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts back to Herod and tells what he did when he learned that the learned men had deceived him.

he had been mocked by the learned men

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the learned men had embarrassed him by tricking him"

He sent and killed all the male children

Herod did not kill the children himself. Alternate translation: "He gave orders for his soldiers to kill all the boys" or "He sent soldiers there to kill all the boy babies"

two years old and under

"2 years old and younger"

according to the time

"based on the time"

Matthew 2:17

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Jeremiah to show that the death of all of the male children in the region of Bethlehem was according to scripture.

Then was fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "This fulfilled" or "Herod's actions fulfilled"

what had been spoken through Jeremiah the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophet Jeremiah"

Matthew 2:18

A voice was heard ... they were no more

Matthew is quoting the prophet Jeremiah.

A voice was heard

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People heard a voice" or "There was a loud sound"

Rachel weeping for her children

Rachel lived many years before this time. This prophecy shows Rachel, who has died, weeping for her descendants.

she refused to be comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "no one could comfort her"

because they were no more

"because the children were gone and would never return." Here "were no more" is a mild way of saying they are dead. Alternate translation: "because they were dead"

Matthew 2:19

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to Egypt, where Joseph, Mary, and the young Jesus are living.

behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

Matthew 2:20

those who sought the child's life

Here "sought the child's life" is a way of saying they wanted to kill the child. Alternate translation: "those who were looking for the child in order to kill him"

those who sought

This refers to King Herod and his advisors.

Matthew 2:21

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 2:22

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story that began in Matthew 2:1 about Herod's attempt to kill the new King of the Jews.

But when he heard

"But when Joseph heard"

Archelaus

This is the name of Herod's son.

he was afraid

"Joseph was afraid"

Matthew 2:23

what had been spoken through the prophets

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the Lord spoke long ago through the prophets"

he would be called a Nazarene

Here "he" refers to Jesus. The prophets before the time of Jesus would have referred to him as the Messiah or the Christ. Alternate translation: "people would say that the Christ is a Nazarene"

Chapter 3

Matthew 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in verse 3.

Special concepts in this chapter

"Bear fruit worthy of repentance"

Fruit is a common picture word in the scriptures. Writers use it to describe the results of either good or bad behavior. In this chapter, good fruit is the result of living as God commands. (See: fruit)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"The kingdom of heaven is near"

No one knows for sure whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when John spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases "is coming near" and "has come near."

Matthew 3:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story where Matthew tells of the ministry of John the Baptist.

In those days

This is many years after Joseph and his family left Egypt and went to Nazareth. This is probably near the time that Jesus begins his ministry. Alternate translation: "Some time later" or "Some years later"

Matthew 3:2

Repent

This is plural in form. John is speaking to the crowds.

the kingdom of heaven is near

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use the word "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "our God in heaven will soon show himself to be king"

Matthew 3:3

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that John the Baptist was God's appointed messenger to prepare for Jesus's ministry.

For this is he who was spoken of by Isaiah the prophet, saying
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"For Isaiah the prophet was speaking of John the Baptist when he said"

The voice of one calling out in the wilderness

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one calling out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone calling out in the wilderness"

Make ready the way of the Lord ... make his paths straight
These two phrases mean the same thing.

Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents being prepared to hear the Lord's message when he comes. People do this by repenting of their sins. Alternate translation: "Prepare to hear the Lord's message when he comes" or "Repent and be ready for the Lord to come"

Matthew 3:4

Now ... wild honey

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells background information about John the Baptist.

wore clothing of camel's hair and a leather belt around his waist
This clothing symbolizes that John is a prophet like the prophets from long ago, especially the prophet Elijah.

Matthew 3:5

Then Jerusalem, all Judea, and all the region
The words "Jerusalem," "Judea," and "the region" are metonyms for the people from those areas. The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize that very many people went out. Alternate translation: Then very many people from Jerusalem, Judea, and that region"

Matthew 3:6

They were baptized by him ... River, confessing their sins
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized them ... River after they confessed their sins"

They
This refers to the people coming from Jerusalem, Judea, and the region around the Jordan River.

Matthew 3:7

General Information:
John the Baptist begins to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees.

You offspring of vipers, who
This is a metaphor. Here "offspring" means "having the characteristic of." Vipers are a kind of dangerous snakes and represent evil. This can be stated as a separate sentence. Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes! Who" or "You are evil like poisonous snakes! Who"

who warned you to flee from the wrath that is coming?
John uses a question to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "you cannot flee from God's wrath like this." or "do not think that you can flee from God's wrath just because I baptize you."

flee from the wrath that is coming
The word "wrath" is being used to refer to God's punishment because his wrath precedes it. Alternate translation: "run away from the punishment that is coming" or "escape because God is about to punish you"

Matthew 3:8

Bear fruit worthy of repentance
The phrase "bear fruit" is a metaphor referring to a person's actions. Alternate translation: "Let your actions show that you have truly repented"

Matthew 3:9

We have Abraham for our father
"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are descendants of Abraham." The Jewish leaders thought that God would not punish them since they were descendants of Abraham.

For I say to you
This adds emphasis to what John is about to say.

God is able to raise up children for Abraham even out of these stones
"God is able to make physical descendants out of even these stones and give them to Abraham"

Matthew 3:10

Connecting Statement:
John the Baptist continues to rebuke the Pharisees and Sadducees.

Already the ax has been placed against the root of the trees. So every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire
This metaphor means God is ready to punish sinners. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has his axe and he is ready to cut down and burn any tree that grows bad fruit" or "As a person gets his axe ready to cut down and burn a tree that grows bad fruit, God is ready to punish you for your sins"

Matthew 3:11

for repentance
"to show that you have repented"

But he who comes after me
Jesus is the person who comes after John.

is mightier than I
"is more important than I am"

He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire
This metaphor compares John's baptism with water to the future baptism with fire. This means John's baptism only symbolically cleanses people of their sins. The baptism by Holy Spirit and fire will truly cleanse people of their sins. If possible, use the word "baptize" in your translation to keep the comparison to John's baptism.

Matthew 3:12

His winnowing fork is in his hand
This metaphor compares the way Christ will separate the righteous people from the unrighteous people to the way a man separates wheat grain from chaff.
Alternate translation: "Christ is like a man whose winnowing fork is in his hand"

His winnowing fork is in his hand
Here "in his hand" means the person is ready to act.
Alternate translation: "Christ is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready"

winnowing fork
This is a tool for tossing wheat up into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind. It is similar in shape to a pitchfork but with wide tines made of wood.

his threshing floor
"his ground" or "the ground where he separates the grain from the chaff"

gather his wheat into the storehouse ... burn up the chaff with fire that can never be put out
This is a metaphor showing how God will separate righteous people from evil people. The righteous will go to heaven like wheat into a farmer's storehouse, and God will burn the people who are like chaff with a fire that will never be put out.

can never be put out
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will never burn out"

Matthew 3:13

Connecting Statement:
Here the scene shifts to a later time when John the Baptist baptizes Jesus.

to be baptized by John
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so John could baptize him"

Matthew 3:14

I need to be baptized by you, and do you come to me?
John uses a question to show his surprise at Jesus's request. Alternate translation: "You are more important than I am. I should not baptize you. You should baptize me."

Matthew 3:15

for us
Here "us" refers to Jesus and John.

John permitted him
You may need to make explicit that John permitted Jesus to be baptized by John. Alternate translation: "John allowed Jesus to be baptized" or "John agreed to baptize Jesus"

Matthew 3:16

Connecting Statement:
This is the end of the part of the story about John the Baptist. It describes what happened after he baptized Jesus.

After he was baptized
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After John baptized Jesus"

behold
The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

the heavens were opened to him
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus saw the sky open" or "God opened the heavens to Jesus"

coming down like a dove
Possible meanings are 1) this is simply a statement that the Spirit was in the form of a dove or 2) this is a simile that compares the Spirit coming down upon Jesus gently, the way a dove would.

Matthew 3:17

a voice came out of the heavens saying
"Jesus heard a voice from heaven." Here "voice" refers to God speaking. Alternate translation: "God spoke from heaven"

Son
This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

Chapter 4

Matthew 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in verses 6, 15 and 16, which is from the Old Testament.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"the kingdom of heaven has come near"

No one knows for use whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when Jesus spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrase "is coming near" and "has come near."

"If you are the Son of God"

The reader should not understand these words in verses 3 and 6 to mean that Satan did not know whether Jesus was the Son of God. God had already said that Jesus was his Son ([Matthew 3:17](#)), so Satan knew who Jesus was. He also knew that Jesus could make stones become bread and could throw himself off of high places and not be hurt. He was trying to make Jesus do these things and so disobey God and obey Satan. These words can be translated as "Show me your power if you are the Son of God" (See: [satan and sonofgod](#))

Matthew 4:1

General Information:

Here Matthew begins a new part of the story in which Satan tempts Jesus in the wilderness after Jesus has been there for 40 days.

Jesus was led up by the Spirit

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Spirit led Jesus"

to be tempted by the devil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so the devil could tempt Jesus"

Matthew 4:2

he had fasted ... he was hungry

These refer to Jesus.

forty days and forty nights

"40 days and 40 nights." This refers to 24-hour periods.

Alternate translation: "40 days"

Matthew 4:3

The tempter

These words refer to the same being as "the devil" (verse 1). You may have to use the same word to translate both.

If you are the Son of God, command

It is best to assume that Satan knew that Jesus is the Son of God. Possible meanings are 1) this is a temptation to do miracles for Jesus's own benefit.

Alternate translation: "You are the Son of God, so you can command" or 2) this is a challenge or accusation.

Alternate translation: "Prove that you are the Son of God by commanding"

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

command these stones to become bread.

You could translate this with a direct quotation.

Alternate translation: "say to these stones, 'Become bread.'"

bread

Here "bread" refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

Matthew 4:4

General Information:

Jesus rebukes Satan with a quotation from Deuteronomy.

It is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses wrote this in the scriptures long ago"

Man does not live on bread alone

This implies that there is something more important to life than food.

but by every word that comes out of the mouth of God

Here "word" and "mouth" refer to what God says.

Alternate translation: "but by listening to everything that God says"

Matthew 4:5

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 4:6

General Information:

Satan quotes from the Psalms in order to tempt Jesus.

If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down

It is best to assume that Satan knew that Jesus is the

Son of God. Possible meanings are 1) this is a

temptation to do a miracle for Jesus's own benefit.

Alternate translation: "Since you are truly the Son of

God, you can throw yourself down" or 2) this is a

challenge or accusation. Alternate translation: "Prove

that you are truly the Son of God by throwing yourself down"

the Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus that describes his relationship to God.

throw yourself down

"let yourself fall to the ground" or "jump down"

for it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the writer wrote in the scriptures" or "for it says in the scriptures"

'He will command his angels to take care of you,' and

This can be translated with a direct quotation, and you

can specify that it is God who will command. Alternate

translation: "'God will say to his angels, 'Take care of

him,'" and" or "'God will command his angels to take

care of you,' and"

They will carry you

"The angels will hold you"

Matthew 4:7

General Information:

Jesus rebukes Satan with another quotation from Deuteronomy.

Again it is written

It is understood that Jesus is quoting scripture again.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Again, I will tell you what Moses wrote in the

scriptures"

You must not test

Here "you" refers to anyone. Alternate translation: "One

should not test" or "No person should test"

Matthew 4:8

Again, the devil

"Next, the devil"

Matthew 4:9

He said to him

"The devil said to Jesus"

All these things I will give you

"I will give you all these things." The tempter is

emphasizing here that he will give "all these things,"

not just some of them.

fall down

"put your face near the ground." This was a common action to show that a person was worshiping.

Matthew 4:10

General Information:

Jesus rebukes Satan with another quotation from Deuteronomy.

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about how Satan tempted Jesus.

For it is written

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "For Moses also wrote in the scriptures"

You will worship ... you will serve

Both instances of "you" are singular, a command to everyone who hears it.

Matthew 4:11

behold

The word "behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the important new information that follows.

Matthew 4:12

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Matthew describes the beginning of Jesus's ministry in Galilee. These verses explain how Jesus came to be in Galilee.

Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

John had been handed over

This can be stated in active form and the information omitted from the euphemism can be stated. Alternate translation: "the king had handed John over to the prison" or "the king had arrested John"

Matthew 4:13

in the territories of Zebulun and Naphtali

"Zebulun" and "Naphtali" are the names of the tribes that lived in these territories many years earlier before foreigners took control of the land of Israel.

Matthew 4:14

This happened

This refers to Jesus's going to live in Capernaum.

what was said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what God said"

Matthew 4:15

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's ministry in Galilee was a fulfillment of prophecy.

The land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali ... Galilee of the Gentiles!

These are two descriptions of the same territory.

toward the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

Matthew 4:16

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's ministry in Galilee was a fulfillment of prophecy.

The people who sat in darkness have seen a great light

Here "darkness" is a metaphor for not knowing the truth about God. And "light" is a metaphor for God's true message that saves people from their sin.

The people who sat

These words can be combined with the sentence beginning with "The land of Zebulun" (verse 15).

Alternate translation: "In the territory of Zebulun and Naphtali ... where many Gentiles live, the people who sat"

who sat ... who sat

"who were living ... who were living." The word "sat" is an idiom for having lived for a long time in one place, not to sitting on the ground or a piece of furniture.

to those who sat in the region and shadow of death, upon them has a light arisen

This basically has the same meaning as the first part of the sentence. Here "those who sat in the region and shadow of death" is a metaphor. It represents those who did not know God. These people were in danger of dying and being separated from God forever.

Matthew 4:17

the kingdom of heaven is near

The phrase "the kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, include a word that means "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 3:2]

Matthew 4:18

General Information:

This begins a new scene within the part of the story about Jesus's ministry in Galilee. Here he begins to gather men to be his disciples.

casting a net into the sea

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

Matthew 4:19

Come, follow me

Jesus invites Simon and Andrew to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples. Alternate translation: "Be my disciples"

I will make you fishers of men

This metaphor means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. Alternate translation: "I will teach you to gather men to me like you used to gather fish"

Matthew 4:20

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 4:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus calls more men to be his disciples.

He called them

"Jesus called John and James." This phrase also means that Jesus invited them to follow him, live with him, and become his disciples.

Matthew 4:22

they immediately left

"at that moment they left"

left the boat ... and followed him

It should be clear that they immediately put their nets down and left that place with Jesus. If your language requires you to tell whether they were leaving for the rest of the day or for a long time or for the rest of their lives, you should probably translate as they were

leaving for the rest of their lives. It would be good to have a note saying that the Greek does not specify how long they would be gone.

Matthew 4:23

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of the part of the story about the beginning of Jesus's ministry in Galilee. The rest of this chapter summarizes what he did and how the people responded.

teaching in their synagogues

"teaching in the synagogues of the Galileans" or

"teaching in the synagogues of those people"

preaching the gospel of the kingdom

Here "kingdom" refers to God's reign as king. Alternate translation: "preaching the good news that God will show himself as king"

every kind of disease and sickness

The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease" is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

Matthew 4:24

those who were possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those whom demons controlled"

the epileptics

The word "epileptic" refers to people who have epilepsy and so sometimes become unconscious and move uncontrollably.

Matthew 4:25

the Decapolis

This name means "the Ten Towns." This is the name of a region to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

Chapter 5

Matthew 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

Matthew 5:3-10, known as The Beatitudes or as The Blessings, has been set apart by being set farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text, with each line beginning with the word "blessed." This way of placing the words on the page highlights the poetic form of this teaching.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

Special concepts in this chapter

"His disciples"

It is possible to refer to anyone who followed Jesus as a follower or disciple. Jesus selected twelve of his followers to become his closest disciples, "the twelve disciples." They would later become known as the apostles.

Matthew 5:1

Connecting Statement:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story in which Jesus begins to teach his disciples. This part continues through the end of chapter 7 and is frequently called the Sermon on the Mount.

for theirs is the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "for God in heaven will be their king"

Matthew 5:4

those who mourn

Possible reasons they are sad are 1) the sinfulness of the world or 2) their own sins or 3) the death of someone. Do not specify the reason for mourning unless your language requires it.

Matthew 5:2

He opened his mouth

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "Jesus began to speak"

they will be comforted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will comfort them"

taught them

The word "them" refers to his disciples.

Matthew 5:3

General Information:

Here, Jesus begins to describe the characteristics of people who are blessed.

Matthew 5:5

the meek

"the gentle" or "those who do not rely on their own power"

the poor in spirit

This means people who are humble. Alternate translation: "those who know they need God"

they will inherit the earth

"God will give them the entire earth"

Matthew 5:6

those who hunger and thirst for righteousness

This metaphor describes people who strongly desire to do what is right. Alternate translation: "those who desire to live right as much as they desire food and drink"

they will be filled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will fill them" or "God will satisfy them"

Matthew 5:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 5:8

the pure in heart

"people whose hearts are pure." Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or intentions. Alternate translation: "those who only want to serve God"

they will see God

This means they will be able to live in God's presence. Alternate translation: "God will allow them to live with him"

Matthew 5:9

the peacemakers

These are the people who help others to have peace with one another.

for they will be called sons of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for God will call them his children" or "they will be children of God"

sons of God

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

Matthew 5:10

those who have been persecuted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "those people whom others treat unfairly"

for righteousness' sake

"because they do what God wants them to do"

theirs is the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:3]

Matthew 5:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes describing the characteristics of people who are blessed.

Blessed are you

The word "you" is plural.

say all kinds of evil things against you falsely

"say all kinds of evil lies about you" or "say bad things about you that are not true"

for my sake

"because you follow me" or "because you believe in me"

Matthew 5:12

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 5:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about how his disciples are like salt and light.

You are the salt of the earth

Possible meanings are 1) just as salt makes food good, disciples of Jesus influence the people of the world so that they will be good. Alternate translation: "You are like salt for the people of the world" or 2) just as salt preserves food, disciples of Jesus keep people from becoming totally corrupt. Alternate translation: "As salt is for food, you are for the world"

if the salt has lost its taste

Possible meanings are 1) "if the salt has lost its power to do things that salt does" or 2) "if the salt has lost its flavor."

how can it be made salty again?

"how can it be made useful again?" Jesus uses a question to teach the disciples. Alternate translation: "there is no way for it to become useful again."

except to be thrown out and trampled under people's feet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "except for people to throw it out into the road and walk on it"

Matthew 5:14

You are the light of the world

This means Jesus's followers bring the message of God's truth to all the people who do not know God. Alternate translation: "You are like a light for the people of the world"

A city set on a hill cannot be hidden

At night when it is dark, people can see the city lights shining. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "During the night, no one can hide the lights that shine from a city on a hill" or "Everyone sees the lights of a city on a hill"

Matthew 5:15

Neither do people light a lamp

"People do not light a lamp"

put it under a basket

"place the lamp under a basket." This is saying it is foolish to create light only to hide it so people do not see the light of the lamp.

Matthew 5:16

Let your light shine before people

This means a disciple of Jesus should live in such a way that others can learn about God's truth. Alternate translation: "Let your lives be like a light that shines before people"

your Father who is in heaven

It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human father.

Matthew 5:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law.

the prophets

This refers to what the prophets wrote in the scriptures.

Matthew 5:18

truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

until heaven and earth pass away

Here "heaven" and "earth" refer to the entire universe.

Alternate translation: "as long as the universe lasts"

all things have been accomplished

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all things have happened" or "God causes all things to happen"

all things

The phrase "all things" refers to everything in the law.

Alternate translation: "everything in the law" or "all that is written in the law"

Matthew 5:19

whoever breaks

Possible meanings are 1) "whoever disobeys" or 2)

"whoever ignores."

the least one of these commandments and teaches

"any of these commandments, even the least important one, and teaches"

whoever ... teaches others to do so will be called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"if anyone ... teaches others to do so, God will call that person"

least in the kingdom of heaven

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. This phrase is found only in Matthew. If possible

use "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation:

"the least important in his heavenly kingdom" or "the least important under the rule of our God in heaven"

keeps them and teaches them

"obeys all these commandments and teaches others to do the same"

great

most important

Matthew 5:20

For I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

you ... your ... you

These are plural.

that unless your righteousness exceeds ... Pharisees, you will in no way enter

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "that your righteousness must exceed ... Pharisees in order to enter"

Matthew 5:21

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "you have heard." The understood "you" is singular in "Do not murder," but in some languages it may need to be translated as plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about murder and anger.

it was said to them in ancient times

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God said to those who lived long ago" or "Moses said to your ancestors long ago"

will be subject to judgment

Possible meanings are 1) "will have to go to the judge" or 2) "will be in danger of punishment."

Matthew 5:22

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "I say to you."

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

brother

This refers to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

worthless person ... fool

Both of these insults represent a person who cannot think correctly. "Worthless person" is close to "brainless," where "fool" adds the idea of disobedience to God.

council

This was likely a local council, not the main Sanhedrin in Jerusalem.

Matthew 5:23

you

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

offering your gift

"giving your gift" or "bringing your gift"

at the altar

It is implied that this is God's altar at the temple in Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "to God at the altar in the temple"

there remember

"while you are standing at the altar you remember"

your brother has anything against you

"another person is angry with you because of something you did"

Matthew 5:24

First be reconciled with your brother

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "First make peace with the person"

Matthew 5:25

Agree with your

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

your adversary

This is a person who takes someone to court for doing something wrong to accuse him before a judge.

may hand you over to the judge

Here "hand you over" means to give someone into the control of someone else. Alternate translation: "will let the judge deal with you"

the judge may hand you over to the officer

Here "hand you over" means to give someone into the control of someone else. Alternate translation: "the judge will give you over to the officer"

officer

a person who has authority to carry out the decisions of a judge

you may be thrown into prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the officer might put you in prison"

Matthew 5:26

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

from there

"from prison"

Matthew 5:27

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "you have heard." The understood "you" is singular in "Do not commit adultery," but in some languages it may need to be translated as plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about adultery and lust.

that it was said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God said" or "that Moses said"

commit

This word means to act out or do something.

Matthew 5:28

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

everyone who looks on a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart

This metaphor indicates that a man who lusts after a woman is as guilty of adultery as a man who actually commits the act of adultery.

to lust after her

"and lusts after her" or "and desires to sleep with her"

in his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts.

Alternate translation: "in his mind" or "in his thoughts"

Matthew 5:29

If your right eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and throw it away from you

The irony here is that people use their eyes in part to keep from stumbling. Here "eye" is a metonym for what a person chooses to look at or learn about, "stumble" is a metaphor for "sin," and "pluck it out and throw it away from you" is a hyperbolic metaphor for doing everything possible to avoid sinning. Alternate translation: "if what you are interested in causes you to want to sin, do everything you can to stay away from it"

If your

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are singular, but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

right eye

This refers to the eye on the right-hand side of the face. The Jews thought of the right hand as more important than the left, so the phrase "right eye" was a metaphor for the most important eye. You may need to translate "right" as "better" or "stronger."

pluck it out

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning. It means "forcefully remove it" or "destroy it." If the right eye is not specifically mentioned, you may need to translate this "destroy your eyes." If eyes have been mentioned, you may need to translate this "destroy them."

throw it away from you

"get rid of it"

one of your members should perish

"you should lose one part of your body"

than that your whole body should be thrown into hell

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "than for God to throw your whole body into hell"

Matthew 5:30

If your right hand causes

In this metonymy, the hand stands for the actions of the whole person.

right hand

This means the most important hand, as opposed to the left hand. You may need to translate "right" as "better" or "stronger."

cut it off

This is an exaggerated command for a person to do whatever he needs to do to stop sinning.

Matthew 5:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about divorce.

It was also said

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God also said" or "Moses also said"

sends his wife away

This is a euphemism for "divorces his wife."

let him give

"he must give"

Matthew 5:32

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

makes her an adulteress

It is the man who divorces the woman improperly who "causes her to commit adultery." In many cultures it would be normal for her to remarry, but if the divorce is improper, such a remarriage is adultery.

her after she has been divorced

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "her after her husband has divorced her" or "the divorced woman"

Matthew 5:33

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" is plural in "you have heard." The "you" and "your" are singular in "Do not swear" and "carry out your oaths,"

but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about swearing oaths.

Again, you

"Also, you" or "Here is another example. You"

it was said to those in ancient times

This can be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "God said to those who lived long ago" or "Moses said to your ancestors long ago"

Do not swear a false oath, but carry out your oaths to the Lord.

"Do not swear that you will do something and then not do it. Instead do whatever you have sworn to the Lord that you will do"

Matthew 5:34

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is equally important to the original commands from God. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

swear not at all

"do not swear at all" or "do not swear by anything"

it is the throne of God

Because God reigns from heaven, Jesus speaks of heaven as if it were a throne. Alternate translation: "it is from here that God rules"

Matthew 5:35

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes his words from verse 34, telling the people not to swear.

nor by the earth ... city of the great King

Here Jesus means that when people make a promise or when they say that something is true, they must not swear by anything. Some people were teaching that if a person swears by God that he will do something, then he must do it, but if he swears by something else, such as by heaven or earth, then it is less offensive if he does not do what he swore to do. Jesus says that swearing by heaven or earth or Jerusalem is just as serious as

swearing by God because those things all belong to God.

it is the footstool for his feet

This metaphor means the earth also belongs to God.

Alternate translation: "it is like a footstool where a king rests his feet"

for it is the city of the great King

"for it is the city that belongs to God, the great King"

Matthew 5:36

General Information:

Previously Jesus told his hearers that God's throne, footstool, and earthly home are not theirs to swear by. Here he says that they may not swear even by their own heads.

your ... you

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of these words are singular, but you may have to translate them as plural.

swear

This refers to taking an oath. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:34.

Matthew 5:37

let your speech be 'Yes, yes,' or 'No, no.'

"if you mean 'yes,' say 'yes,' and if you mean 'no,' say 'no.'"

Matthew 5:38

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" in "you have heard" is plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about retaliating against an enemy.

that it was said

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:27]

eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth

The law of Moses allowed a person to harm a person in the same way he had harmed him, but he could not harm him worse.

Matthew 5:39

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" in "I say to you" is plural. The "you" in "whoever strikes you" and the understood "you" in "turn to him" are both singular, but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis.

one who is evil

"an evil person" or "someone who harms you"

strikes ... your right cheek

To strike the side of a man's face was an insult in Jesus's culture. As with the eye and the hand, the right cheek is the more important one, and striking that cheek was a terrible insult.

strikes

hits with the back of an open hand

turn to him the other also

"let him hit your other cheek also"

Matthew 5:40

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular. In some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

tunic ... cloak

The "tunic" was worn close to the body, like a heavy shirt or a sweater. The "cloak," the more valuable of the two, was worn over the "tunic" for warmth and also used as a blanket for warmth at night.

let that person also have

"give also to that person"

Matthew 5:41

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The word "you" is singular, as is the understood "you" in the command

"go." In some languages these may need to be translated as plural.

Whoever

"Anyone who." The context implies that he is speaking about a Roman soldier.

one mile

This is one thousand paces, which is the distance a Roman soldier could legally force someone to carry something for him. If "mile" is confusing, it can be translated as "one kilometer" or "a distance."

with him

This refers to the one who compels you to go.

go with him two

"go the mile he forces you to go, and then go another mile." If "mile" is confusing, you can translate it as "two kilometers" or "twice as far."

Matthew 5:42

do not turn away from

"do not refuse to lend to." This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "lend to"

Matthew 5:43

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The "you" in "you have heard" is plural. The "you" and "your" are singular in "You must love your neighbor and hate your enemy," but in some languages they may need to be translated as plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. Here he begins to speak about loving enemies.

that it was said

This can be stated in active form. See how you translated this in [Matthew 5:27]

your neighbor

Here the word "neighbor" does not refer to a specific neighbor, but to any members of one's community or people group. These are people whom one usually desires to treat kindly or at least believes he ought to treat kindly. Alternate translation: "your countrymen" or "those who belong to your people group"

Matthew 5:44

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

But I say

Jesus agrees with God and his word, but he does not agree with the way the religious leaders have applied God's word. The "I" is emphatic. This indicates that what Jesus says is just as important as the original commands. Try to translate this phrase in a way that shows that emphasis. See how you translated this in Matthew 5:22.

I say to you ... your enemies ... pray ... persecute you

All instances of "you" and "your," as well as the command to pray, are plural.

Matthew 5:45

you may be sons of your Father

It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to human sons or children.

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 5:46

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching about how he has come to fulfill the Old Testament law. This section began in Matthew 5:17.

what reward do you get?

Jesus uses this question to teach the people that loving those who love them is not something special that God will reward them for. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you will get no reward."

Do not even the tax collectors do the same thing?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even the tax collectors do the same thing."

Matthew 5:47

what do you do more than others?
This question can be translated as a statement.
Alternate translation: "you do nothing more than others."

greet
This is a general term for showing a desire for the well-being of the hearer.

Do not even the Gentiles do the same thing?
This question can be translated as a statement.
Alternate translation: "Even the Gentiles do the same thing."

Matthew 5:48

Father
This is an important title for God.

Chapter 6

Matthew 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Matthew 6 continues Jesus's extended teaching known as "The Sermon on the Mount."

You may wish to set apart the prayer in 6:9-11 by placing it farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text.

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

Matthew 6:1

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3. In this section, Jesus addresses the "acts of righteousness" of alms, prayer, and fasting.

Watch out

This is a way to warn people to be careful. Alternate translation: "Be careful" or "Beware"

before people to be seen by them

It is implied that those who see the person will honor him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "in front of people just so that they can see you and give you honor for what you have done"

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 6:2

do not sound a trumpet before yourself

This metaphor means to do something that purposefully gets people's attention. Alternate translation: "do not draw attention to yourself like someone who plays a loud trumpet in a crowd"

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Matthew 6:3

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples about alms.

do not let your left hand know what your right hand is doing
This is a metaphor for total secrecy. Just as hands usually work together and each can be said to "know" what the other is doing at all times, you should not let even those closest to you know when you are giving to the poor.

Matthew 6:4

your alms may be given in secret

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you can give to the poor without other people knowing"

Matthew 6:5

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about prayer.

so that they may be seen by people

It is implied that those who see them will give them honor. This can be stated in active form. Alternate

translation: "so that people will see them and give them honor"

Truly I say to you
"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Matthew 6:6

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

enter your inner chamber. Shut the door
"go to a private place" or "go where you can be alone"

Father, who is in secret
Possible meanings are 1) no one can see God. Alternate translation: "Father, who is invisible" or 2) God is in that private place with the praying person. Alternate translation: "Father, who is with you in private"

Father
This is an important title for God.

your Father who sees in secret
"your Father will see what you do in private and"

Matthew 6:7

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" in verses 5 and 7 are plural; in verse 6 they are singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

do not make useless repetitions
Possible meanings are 1) the repetitions are useless. Alternate translation: "do not keep uselessly saying things over and over again" or 2) the words or sentences are meaningless. Alternate translation: "do not keep repeating meaningless words"

they will be heard
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "their false gods will hear them"

Matthew 6:8

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about how they as individuals should pray. The words "you" and "your" are plural in the first sentence. Within the prayer, the

words "you" and "your" are singular and refer to God, "Our Father in heaven."

Father
This is an important title for God.

you ask him
See how you translated "ask" in Matthew 5:42.

Matthew 6:9

Our Father in heaven
This is the beginning of the prayer and how Jesus teaches the people to address God.

may your name be honored as holy
Here "your name" refers to God himself. This can also be expressed with an active verb. Alternate translation: "may people honor you as holy" or "may people honor you because you are holy"

may your name be honored as holy
By saying this, people show that they want to honor God as holy. Alternate translation: "help us to honor your name as holy" or "we want to honor you as holy"

Matthew 6:10

May your kingdom come
Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "May you rule over everyone and everything completely"

May your will be done on earth as it is in heaven
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May everything on earth happen in accordance with your will, just as everything in heaven does"

Matthew 6:11

General Information:
This is part of a prayer that Jesus was teaching the people. All instances of "we," "us," and "our" refer only to those who would pray this prayer. Those words do not also refer to God, to whom they would be praying.

daily bread
Here "bread" refers to food in general.

Matthew 6:12

debts
A debt is what one person owes another. This is a metaphor for sins.

our debtors

A debtor is a person who owes a debt to another person. This is a metaphor for those who have sinned against us.

Matthew 6:13

Do not bring us into temptation

The word "temptation," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "Do not let anything tempt us" or "Do not let anything cause us to desire to sin"

Matthew 6:14

General Information:

All instances of "you" and "your" are plural. However, Jesus is telling his hearers what will happen to them as individuals if each person does not forgive others.

their trespasses

The abstract noun "trespasses" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "when they trespass against you"

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 6:15

their trespasses ... your trespasses

The abstract noun "trespasses" can be translated as a verb. Alternate translation: "them when they trespass against you ... you when you trespass against God" or "them when they do things that harm you ... you when you do things that make your Father angry"

Matthew 6:16

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" are plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about fasting.

they disfigure their faces

The hypocrites would not wash their faces and would not comb their hair. They did this purposely to draw attention to themselves so that people would see them and give them honor for fasting.

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

Matthew 6:17

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, though in some languages they may also need to be translated as plural.

anoint your head

"put oil in your hair" or "groom your hair." To "anoint" the head here is to take normal care of one's hair. It has nothing to do with "Christ" meaning "anointed one." Jesus means that people should look the same whether they are fasting or not.

Matthew 6:18

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are singular, though in some languages they may also need to be translated as plural.

Father who is in secret

Possible meanings are 1) no one can see God. Alternate translation: "Father, who is invisible" or 2) God is with that person who fasts secretly. Alternate translation: "Father, who is with you in private" See how you translated this in Matthew 6:6.

Father

This is an important title for God.

who sees in secret

"who sees what you do in private." See how you translated this in Matthew 6:6.

Matthew 6:19

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All occurrences of "you" and "your" are plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach about money and possessions.

treasures

riches, the things to which a person gives the most value

where moth and rust destroy

"where moth and rust ruin treasures"

moth

a small, flying insect that destroys cloth

rust

a brown substance that forms on metals

Matthew 6:20

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do.

store up for yourselves treasures in heaven

This is a metaphor that means do good things on earth so God will reward you in heaven.

Matthew 6:21

General Information:

All occurrences of "your" are singular, though in some languages they may also need to be translated in plural.

there will your heart be also

Here "heart" means a person's thoughts and interests.

Matthew 6:22

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

The eye is the lamp of the body

This is a metaphor. Possible meanings are 1) the eye is like a lamp because it enables a person to see things, or 2) the eye is like a lamp shining on a person's body because it shows what the person is really like.

Alternate translation: "A person's eyes are like a lamp for his body"

if your eye is good, your whole body is filled with light

Possible meanings are 1) "if your eye is good, it fills your body with light" or 2) "if your eye is good, it shows that your body is filled with light."

if your eye is good

Possible meanings are "if your eye is noble" or "if your eye sees clearly." Jesus speaks of the eye to talk about what a person thinks about and wants. Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "if you are generous" or 2) "if you look at and want at what is good"

your whole body is filled with light

Possible meanings are 1) "you are full of righteousness" or 2) "you understand what is truly good"

eye is

You may have to translate this as plural, "eyes are."

Matthew 6:23

if your eye is bad, your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are 1) "if your eye is bad, it fills your body with darkness" or 2) "if your eye is bad, it shows that your body is full of darkness."

if your eye is bad

Possible meanings are "if your eye is evil" or "if your eye does not see clearly." Jesus speaks of the eye to talk about what a person thinks about and wants. Possible meanings of the metaphor are 1) "if you are greedy," or 2) "if you do not look at and want what is right."

if your eye is bad

This does not refer to magic. Jewish people often used this as a metaphor for someone who is greedy.

your whole body is full of darkness

Possible meanings are "you are full of evil" or 2) "you will understand nothing about what is right."

if the light that is in you is actually darkness, how great is that darkness!

"if that which is supposed to cause light in your body causes darkness, then your body is in complete darkness"

Matthew 6:24

for either he will hate the one and love the other, or else he will be devoted to one and despise the other

Both of these phrases mean basically the same thing. They emphasize that a person cannot love and be devoted both to God and money at the same time.

You cannot serve God and wealth

"You cannot love God and money at the same time"

Matthew 6:25

General Information:

Here the instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

I say to you

This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

to you

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do.

is not life more than food, and the body more than clothes?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "obviously life is more than what you eat, and your body is more than what you wear." or "clearly there are things in life that are more important than

food, and there are things concerning the body that are more important than clothes."

Matthew 6:26

barns
places to store crops

Father
This is an important title for God.

Are you not more valuable than they are?
Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "Obviously you are more valuable than birds."

Matthew 6:27

General Information:
Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. All instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

Which one of you by being anxious can add one cubit to his lifespan?
Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Here to "add one cubit to his lifespan" is a metaphor for adding time to how long a person will live. Alternate translation: "None of you can, just by worrying, add years to your life. You cannot add even one minute to your life! So you should not worry about things you need."

one cubit
A cubit, a measure of a little less than half a meter, is used here as a metaphor for a short period of time.

Matthew 6:28

Why are you anxious about clothing?
Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "You should not be worried about what you will wear."

Think about
"Consider"

lilies ... They do not labor, and they do not spin cloth
Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

lilies
A lily is a kind of wild flower.

Matthew 6:29

even Solomon ... was not clothed like one of these
Jesus speaks about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

I say to you
This adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

was not clothed like one of these
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did not wear clothes that are as beautiful as these lilies"

Matthew 6:30

so clothes the grass in the fields
Jesus continues to speak about the lilies as if they were people who wore clothes. The lilies being clothed is a metaphor for the plants having beautiful and colorful flowers.

grass
If your language has a general word that can refer both to "grass" and to the word you used for "lilies" in the previous verse, you can use it here.

is thrown into the oven
The Jews at that time used grass in their fires to cook their food. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone throws it into a fire" or "someone burns it"

how much more will he clothe you ... faith?
Jesus uses this question to teach the people that God will provide what they need. Alternate translation: "he will certainly clothe you ... faith."

you of little faith
"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses the people this way because their anxiety about clothing shows they have little faith in God.

Matthew 6:31

Therefore
"Because of all of this,"

What clothes will we wear
In this sentence, "clothes" is a synecdoche for material possessions. Alternate translation: "What possessions will we have"

Matthew 6:32

For the Gentiles search for these things

"For the Gentiles are concerned about what they will eat, drink, and wear"

your heavenly Father knows that you need them

Jesus is implying that God will make sure their basic needs are met.

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 6:33

seek first his kingdom and his righteousness

Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. Alternate translation: "concern yourselves first with serving God, who is your king, and doing what is right"

all these things will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God will provide all these things for you"

Matthew 6:34

Therefore

"Because of all this"

tomorrow will be anxious for itself

Jesus speaks of "tomorrow" as if it were a person who could worry. Jesus means that a person will have enough to worry about when the next day comes.

Chapter 7

Matthew 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Jesus spoke about many different subjects in this sermon, so you may wish to help the reader by putting an empty line into the text whenever Jesus changed the subject.

Special concepts in this chapter

Matthew 5-7

Many people call the words in Matthew 5-7 the Sermon on the Mount. This is one long lesson that Jesus taught. Bibles divide this lesson into three chapters, but this can sometimes confuse the reader. If your translation divides the text into sections, be sure that the reader understands that the whole sermon is one large section.

"By their fruits you will know them"

Fruit is a common image in the scriptures. It is used to describe the results of either good or bad actions. In this chapter, good fruit is the result of living as God commands. (See: fruit)

Matthew 7:1

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should and should not do. The instances of "you" and the commands are plural.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to teach his disciples in his Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3.

Do not judge

It is implied here that "judge" has the strong meaning of "condemn harshly" or "declare guilty." Alternate translation: "Do not condemn people harshly"

you will not be judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will not condemn you harshly"

Matthew 7:2

For

Be sure the reader understands the statement in 7:2 is based on what Jesus said in 7:1.

with the judgment you judge, you will be judged

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will condemn you in the same way you condemn others"

measure

Possible meanings are 1) this is the amount of punishment given or 2) this is the standard used for judgment.

it will be measured out to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will measure it out to you"

Matthew 7:3

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all singular, but in some languages they may need to be plural.

Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not take notice of the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus uses this question to rebuke the people for paying attention to other people's sins and ignoring their own. Alternate translation: "You look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye." or "Do not look ... brother's eye and ignore the log that is in your own eye."

the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye

This is a metaphor that refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer.

tiny piece of straw

"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

brother

All occurrences of "brother" in 7:3-5 refer to a fellow believer, not to a literal brother or a neighbor.

the log that is in your own eye

This is a metaphor for a person's most important faults. A log could not literally go into a person's eye. Jesus is exaggerating to emphasize that a person should pay attention to his own more important faults before he deals with another person's less important faults.

log

the largest part of a tree that someone has cut down

Matthew 7:4

How can you say ... your own eye?

Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... your own eye."

Matthew 7:5

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 7:6

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

dogs ... pigs

Jews considered these animals dirty, and God told the Jews not to eat them. They are metaphors for wicked people who do not value holy things. It would be best to translate these words literally.

pearls

These are similar to round, valuable stones or beads. They are a metaphor for the knowledge of God or precious things in general.

they may trample

"the pigs may trample"

then turn and tear

"the dogs will then turn and tear"

Matthew 7:7

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are all plural.

Ask ... Seek ... Knock

These are metaphors for praying to God. The verb form shows that we are to keep praying until he answers. If your language has a form for continuing to do something over and over, use it here.

Ask

request things from someone, in this case God. See how you translated this word in Matthew 5:42.

it will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give you what you need"

Seek

look for someone, in this case God

Knock

To knock on a door was a polite way to request that the person inside the house or room open the door. If knocking on a door is impolite or not done in your culture, use the word that describes how people politely ask for doors to be opened. Alternate translation: "Tell God you want him to open the door"

it will be opened to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will open it for you"

Matthew 7:8

who ... asks

See how you translated "ask" in Matthew 5:42.

Matthew 7:9

Or which one of you ... a stone?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "There is not one person among you ... a stone."

son asks

See how you translated "asks" in Matthew 5:42.

a loaf of bread

This refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "some food"

stone

This noun should be translated literally.

Matthew 7:10

Or if he asks for a fish, will give him a snake?

Jesus asks another question to teach the people. It is understood that Jesus is still referring to a man and his son. Alternate translation: "And there is not one person among you, if his son asks for a fish, will give him a snake."

he asks

See how you translated "asks" in Matthew 5:42.

fish ... snake

These nouns should be translated literally.

Matthew 7:11

General Information:

Jesus is talking to a group of people about what they as individuals should or should not do. The instances of "you" and "your" are plural.

how much more will your Father in heaven give ... him?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. Alternate translation: "then your Father in heaven will most certainly give ... him."

Father

This is an important title for God.

ask him

See how you translated "asks" in Matthew 5:42.

Matthew 7:12

whatever things you want people to do to you

"whatever way you want others to act toward you"

for this is the law and the prophets

Here "law" and "prophets" refer to what Moses and the prophets wrote. Alternate translation: "for this is what Moses and the prophets teach in the scriptures"

Matthew 7:13

General Information:

This image of walking through a wide gate to destruction or a narrow gate to life represents how people live and the results of how they live. When you translate, use appropriate words for "wide" and "broad" that are as different as possible from "narrow" in order to emphasize the differences between the two sets of gates and ways.

Enter through the narrow gate ... many people who go through it

This is an image of people traveling on a road and going through a gate into a kingdom. One kingdom is easy to enter; the other is hard to enter.

Enter through the narrow gate

You may need to move this to the end of verse 14:

"Therefore, enter through the narrow gate."

the gate ... the way

Possible meanings are 1) "the way" refers to the road that leads to the gate of a kingdom, or 2) the "the gate" and "the way" both refer to the entrance to the kingdom.

to destruction

This abstract noun can be translated with a verb.

Alternate translation: "to the place where people die"

Matthew 7:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak of people choosing how they are going to live as if they are choosing whether to go on one path or another.

to life

The abstract noun "life" can be translated using the verb "live." Alternate translation: "to the place where people live"

Matthew 7:15

Beware of

"Be on guard against"

who come to you in sheep's clothing but are truly ravenous wolves

This metaphor means that false prophets will pretend they they are good and want to help people, but they are really evil and will do people harm.

ravenous wolves

wolves that are extremely hungry and that consume or destroy everything they touch

Matthew 7:16

By their fruits you will know them

This metaphor refers to a person's actions. Alternate translation: "Just as you know a tree by the fruit that grows on it, you will know false prophets by how they act"

Do people gather ... thistles?

Jesus uses a question to teach the people. The people would have known that the answer is no. Alternate translation: "People do not gather ... thistles."

Matthew 7:17

every good tree produces good fruit

Jesus continues to use the metaphor of fruit to refer to good prophets who produce good works or words.

the bad tree produces bad fruit

Jesus continues to use the metaphor of fruit to refer to bad prophets who produce evil works.

Matthew 7:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 7:19

Every tree that does not produce good fruit is chopped down and thrown into the fire

Jesus continues to use fruit trees as a metaphor to refer to false prophets. Here, he only states what will happen to the bad trees. It is implied that the same thing will happen to the false prophets.

is chopped down and thrown into the fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people chop down and burn"

chopped down

See how you translated this in Matthew 3:10

Matthew 7:20

you will recognize them by their fruits

The word "their" can refer to either the prophets or the trees. This metaphor implies that the fruit of trees and the deeds of prophets both reveal whether they are good or bad. If possible, translate this in a way so that it can refer to both trees and prophets.

Matthew 7:21

will enter into the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "will live with God in heaven when he shows himself to be king"

those who do the will of my Father who is in heaven

"whoever does what my Father in heaven desires"

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 7:22

in that day

Jesus said "that day" knowing his hearers would understand he was referring to the day of judgment. You should include "the day of judgment" only if your readers would not understand otherwise.

did we not prophesy ... drive out demons ... do many miracles?

The people use a question to emphasize that they did these things. Alternate translation: "we prophesied ... we drove out demons ... we did many miracles."

we

This "we" does not include Jesus.

in your name

Possible meanings are 1) "by your authority" or "by your power" or 2) "because we were doing what you wanted us to do" or 3) "because we asked you for the power to do it"

Matthew 7:23

I never knew you

This means the person does not belong to Jesus.

Alternate translation: "You are not my follower" or "I have nothing to do with you"

Matthew 7:24

Therefore

"For that reason"

my words

Here "words" refers to what Jesus says.

like a wise man who built his house upon a rock

Jesus compares those who obey his words to a person who builds his house where nothing can harm it.

rock

This is the bedrock below the topsoil and clay, not a large stone or boulder above the ground.

Matthew 7:25

it was founded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he put its foundation"

Matthew 7:26

like a foolish man who built his house upon the sand
Jesus continues the simile from the previous verse. He compares those who do not obey his words to foolish house-builders. Only a fool would build a house on a sandy place where rain, floods, and wind can sweep the sand away.

Matthew 7:27

Connecting Statement:
This is the end of Jesus's Sermon on the Mount, which began in Matthew 5:3.

fell
Use the general word in your language that describes what happens when a house falls down.

its destruction was complete
The rain, floods, and wind completely destroyed the house.

Matthew 7:28

General Information:
These verses describe how the people in the crowds reacted to Jesus's teaching in the Sermon on the Mount.

It came about that when
This phrase shifts the story from Jesus's teachings to what happened next. Alternate translation: "When" or "After"

were astonished by his teaching
It is clear in 7:29 that they were amazed not just at what Jesus taught but also the way he taught it.
Alternate translation: "were amazed by the way he taught"

Matthew 7:29

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Chapter 8

Matthew 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a new section.

Special concepts in this chapter

Miracles

Jesus performed miracles to show that he could control things that no other people could control. He also showed that it is proper to worship him because he performed miracles. (See: authority)

Matthew 8:1

General Information:

This is the beginning of a new part of the story that contains several accounts of Jesus healing people. This theme continues through Matthew 9:35.

When Jesus had come down from the hill, large crowds followed him

"After Jesus came down from the hill, a large crowd followed him." The crowd may have included both people who had been with him on the mountain and people who had not been with him.

Matthew 8:2

Behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

a leper

"a man who had leprosy" or "a man who had a skin disease"

bowed before him

This is a sign of humble respect before Jesus.

if you are willing

"if you want to" or "if you desire." The leper knew that Jesus had the power to heal him, but he did not know if Jesus would want to touch him.

you can make me clean

Here "clean" means to be healed and to be able to live in the community again. Alternate translation: "you can heal me" or "please heal me"

Matthew 8:3

Be clean

By saying this, Jesus healed the man.

Immediately he was cleansed

"At that moment he was cleansed"

he was cleansed of his leprosy

The result of Jesus saying "Be clean" was that the man was healed. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he was well" or "the leprosy left him" or "the leprosy ended"

Matthew 8:4

to him

This refers to the man that Jesus just healed.

say nothing to any man

"do not say anything to anyone" or "do not tell anyone I healed you"

show yourself to the priest

Jewish law required that the person show his healed skin to the priest, who would then allow him or her to return to the community, to be with other people.

offer the gift that Moses commanded, for a testimony to them

The law of Moses required that someone healed of leprosy give a thanksgiving offering to the priest. When the priest accepted the gift, people would know that the man had been healed. Lepers were ostracized, banned from the community, until they had proof of their healing.

to them

This can possibly refer to 1) the priests or 2) all the people or 3) the critics of Jesus. If possible, use a pronoun that could refer to any of these groups.

Matthew 8:5

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time and place and tells about Jesus healing another person.

When he was coming into Capernaum

"When Jesus was coming into Capernaum"

Matthew 8:6

paralyzed

unable to move because of disease or stroke

Matthew 8:7

Jesus said to him

"Jesus said to the centurion"

I will come and heal him

"I will come to your house and make your servant well"

Matthew 8:8

under my roof

This is an idiom that refers to inside the house.

Alternate translation: "into my house"

say the word

Here "word" represents a command. Alternate translation: "give the command"

will be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will become well"

Matthew 8:9

under authority ... under me

To be "under" someone means to be less important and to obey the commands of someone more important.

Matthew 8:10

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

I have not found anyone with such faith in Israel

Jesus's hearers would have thought that the Jews in Israel, who claim to be children of God, would have

greater faith than anyone. Jesus is saying they are wrong and that the centurion's faith was greater.

Matthew 8:11

you

Here "you" is plural and refers to "those who were following him" in [Matthew 8:10]

from the east and the west

Using the opposites "east" and "west" is a way of saying "everywhere." Alternate translation: "from everywhere" or "from far away in every direction"

recline at the table

People in that culture would lie down beside the table while eating. This phrase indicates that all those at the table are family and close friends. The joy in the kingdom of God is frequently spoken of as if the people there were feasting. Alternate translation: "live as family and friends"

in the kingdom of heaven

Here "kingdom of heaven" refers to God's rule as king. The phrase "kingdom of heaven" is used only in the book of Matthew. If possible, keep "heaven" in your translation. Alternate translation: "when our God in heaven shows that he is king"

Matthew 8:12

sons of the kingdom will be cast out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will cast the sons of the kingdom out"

the sons of the kingdom

The phrase "the sons of the kingdom" is a metonym, referring to the unbelieving Jews of the kingdom of Judea. There is also irony here because the "sons" will be thrown out while the strangers will be welcomed. Alternate translation: "those who should have allowed God to rule over them"

the outer darkness

Here "outer darkness" is a metonym for the place where God sends those who reject them. This is a place that is completely separated from God forever. Alternate translation: "the dark place away from God"

weeping and grinding of teeth

"Grinding of teeth" here is a symbolic act, representing extreme sadness and suffering. Alternate translation: "weeping and showing their extreme suffering"

Matthew 8:13

so may it be done for you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"so I will do it for you"

the servant was healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"Jesus healed the servant"

at that very hour

"at the exact time Jesus said he would heal the servant"

Matthew 8:14

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to a different time and place and tells of Jesus healing another person.

Jesus had come

The disciples were probably with Jesus, but the focus of the story is on what Jesus said and did, so introduce the disciples only if needed to avoid wrong meaning.

Peter's mother-in-law

"the mother of Peter's wife"

Matthew 8:15

the fever left her

If your language would understand this personification to mean that the fever could think and act on its own, this can be translated as "she became better" or "Jesus healed her."

got up

"got out of bed"

Matthew 8:16

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to later that evening and tells of Jesus healing more people and casting out demons.

When evening had come

Because Jews did not work or travel on the Sabbath, "evening" may imply after the Sabbath. They waited until evening to bring people to Jesus. You do not need to mention the Sabbath unless you need to avoid wrong meaning.

many who were possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"many people whom demons possessed" or "many people whom demons controlled"

He drove out the spirits with a word

Here "word" stands for a command. Alternate translation: "He commanded the spirits to leave"

Matthew 8:17

This was to fulfill

"Jesus did this to fulfill"

what was spoken through Isaiah the prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"what Isaiah the prophet had spoken"

He took our illnesses and bore our diseases

Matthew is quoting the prophet Isaiah to show that when Jesus healed people, he fulfilled what Isaiah had said would happen. These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Jesus truly did this. Alternate translation: "Truly he took our illnesses"

Matthew 8:18

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts and tells about Jesus's response to some people who wanted to follow him.

Now

This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Here Matthew starts to tell a new part of the story.

he gave instructions

"he told his disciples"

Matthew 8:19

Then

This means after Jesus "gave instructions" but before he could get into the boat.

wherever

to any place

Matthew 8:20

Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests

Jesus answers with this proverb. This means even wild animals have somewhere to rest.

Foxes

Foxes are animals like dogs. They eat nesting birds and other small animals. If foxes are unknown in your area, use a general term for dog-like creatures or other furry animals.

holes

Foxes make holes in the ground to live in. Use the appropriate word for the place where the animal you use for "foxes" lives.

the Son of Man

Jesus is speaking about himself.

nowhere to lay his head

This refers to a place to sleep. Alternate translation: "no place of his own to sleep"

Matthew 8:21

allow me first to go and bury my father

It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to stay for a longer amount of time until his father dies so he can bury him then. The main point is that the man wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

Matthew 8:22

leave the dead to bury their own dead

Jesus does not mean literally that dead people will bury other dead people. Possible meanings of "the dead": 1) it is a metaphor for those who will soon die, or 2) it is a metaphor for those who do not follow Jesus and are spiritually dead. The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

Matthew 8:23

Connecting Statement:

Here the scene shifts to the account of Jesus calming a storm as he and his disciples cross the Sea of Galilee.

entered a boat

"got onto a boat"

his disciples followed him

Try to use the same words for "disciple" and "follow" that you used in ([Matthew 8:21-22](#)).

Matthew 8:24

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of showing this. Alternate translation: "Suddenly" or "Without warning"

there arose a great storm on the sea

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "a powerful storm arose on the sea"

so that the boat was covered with the waves

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "so that the waves covered the boat"

Matthew 8:25

General Information:

Matthew quotes the prophet Isaiah to show that Jesus's healing ministry was a fulfillment of prophecy.

woke him up, saying, "Save us

Possible meanings are 1) they first woke Jesus and then they said, "Save us" or 2) as they were waking Jesus up, they were saying "Save us."

us ... we

If you need to translate these words as inclusive or exclusive, then inclusive is best. The disciples probably meant they wanted Jesus to save the disciples and himself from drowning.

we are perishing

"we are going to die very soon." The word "perishing" is a strong word for "dying."

Matthew 8:26

to them

"to the disciples"

Why are you afraid ... faith?

Jesus was rebuking the disciples with this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "You should not be afraid ... faith!" or "There is nothing for you to be afraid of ... faith!"

you of little faith

"you who have such little faith." Jesus addresses his disciples this way because their anxiety about the storm shows they have little faith in him to control it. See how you translated this in Matthew 6:30.

Matthew 8:27

What sort of man is this, that even the winds and the sea obey him?

"Even the winds and the sea obey him! What sort of man is this?" This rhetorical question shows that the disciples were surprised. Alternate translation: "This man is unlike any man we have ever seen! Even the wind and the waves obey him!"

even the winds and the sea obey him

For people or animals to obey or disobey is not surprising, but for wind and water to obey is very

surprising. This personification describes the natural elements as being able to hear and respond like people. Matthew 8:31

Matthew 8:28

Connecting Statement:

Here the author returns to the theme of Jesus healing people. This begins an account of Jesus healing two demon-possessed men.

to the other side

"to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

the Gadarenes

This name refers to the people who lived in the town of Gadara.

two men who were possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "two men whom demons possessed" or "two men whom demons were controlling"

They ... were very violent, so that no traveler could pass that way
The demons that were controlling these two men were so dangerous that no one could go through that area.

Matthew 8:29

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. Your language may have a way of showing this.

What do we have to do with you, Son of God?

The demons use a question but they are being hostile toward Jesus. Alternate translation: "Do not bother us, Son of God!"

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus, which describes his relationship to God.

Have you come here to torment us before the set time?

Again, the demons use a question in a hostile way.

Alternate translation: "You should not disobey God by punishing us before the specific time God has set when he will punish us!"

Matthew 8:30

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells background information about a herd of pigs that had been there before Jesus arrived.

If you cast us out

It is implied that the demons knew that Jesus was going to cast them out. Alternate translation: "Because you are going to cast us out"

us

This is exclusive, meaning the demons only.

Matthew 8:32

to them

This refers to the demons inside the men.

The demons came out and went into the pigs

"The demons left the men and entered the pigs"

behold

This alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows.

rushed down the steep hill

"ran quickly down the steep slope"

they died in the water

"they fell into the water and drowned"

Matthew 8:33

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus healing two demon-possessed men.

tending the pigs

"taking care of the pigs"

what had happened to the men who had been possessed by demons

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what Jesus did to help the men whom demons had controlled"

Matthew 8:34

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of showing this.

all the city

The word "city" is a metonym for the people of the city. The word "all" is probably an exaggeration to emphasize how very many people came out. Not necessarily every person came out.

their region
"their area"

Chapter 9

Matthew 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

"Sinners"

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Passive voice

Many sentences in this chapter tell that a person had something happen to him without saying who caused that something to happen. You may have to translate the sentence so that it tells the reader who performed the action.

Rhetorical questions

Speakers in this chapter asked questions to which they already knew the answer. They asked the questions to show that they were not happy with the hearers or to teach them or to get them to think. Your language may have another way of doing this.

Proverbs

Proverbs are very short sentences that use words that are easy to remember. They teach about something that is generally true. People who understand proverbs usually have to know much about the language and culture of the speaker. When you translate the proverbs in this chapter, you may have to use many more words than the speakers used so that your readers can understand things that the original audiences understood.

Matthew 9:1

Connecting Statement:

Matthew returns to the theme, which he began in Matthew 8:1, of Jesus healing people. This begins an account of Jesus healing a paralyzed man.

Jesus entered a boat

It is implied that the disciples were with Jesus.

a boat

This is probably the same boat as in Matthew 8:23. You only need to specify this if needed to avoid confusion.

into his own city

"to the town where he lived." This refers to Capernaum.

Matthew 9:2

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of showing this.

they brought

"some men from the city brought"

their faith

This refers to the faith of the men and may also include the faith of the paralyzed man.

Son

The man was not Jesus's real son. Jesus was speaking to him politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "My friend" or "Young man" or even omitted.

Your sins have been forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins"

Matthew 9:3

Behold

This marks the beginning of another event in the larger story. It may involve different people than the previous events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

among themselves

Possible meanings are 1) each one was thinking to himself, or 2) they were speaking among themselves.

blaspheming

Jesus was claiming to be able to do things the scribes thought only God can do.

Matthew 9:4

knew their thoughts

Jesus knew what they were thinking either supernaturally or because he could see them talking to each other.

Why are you thinking evil in your hearts?

Jesus used this question to rebuke the scribes. Here "hearts" refers to their minds or their thoughts.

Alternate translation: "Do not think evil thoughts."

evil

This is moral evil or wickedness, not simply error in fact.

Matthew 9:5

For which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal the man will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

which is easier, to say, 'Your sins are forgiven,' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

The quotes can be translated as indirect quotes.

Alternate translation: "which is easier, to tell someone that his sins are forgiven, or to tell him to get up and walk?" or "you may think that it is easier to tell

someone that his sins are forgiven than to tell him to get up and walk."

Your sins are forgiven

Here "your" is singular. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I have forgiven your sins"

Matthew 9:6

that you may know

"I will prove to you." The "you" is plural.

your mat ... your house

Here "you" is singular.

go to your house

Jesus is not forbidding the man to go elsewhere. He is giving the man the opportunity to go home.

Matthew 9:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 9:8

they were afraid

Possible meanings are 1) they were afraid, or 2) they were in awe. "Awe" is a feeling of wonder a person has when they see or experience something great or powerful.

who had given

"because he had given"

such authority

This refers to the authority to declare sins forgiven.

Matthew 9:9

Connecting Statement:

This concludes the account of Jesus healing a paralyzed man. Jesus then calls a tax collector to be one of his disciples.

As Jesus passed by from there

This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

Matthew ... him ... He

Church tradition says that this Matthew is the author of this Gospel, but the text gives no reason to change the pronouns from "him" and "He" to "me" and "I."

He said to him
"Jesus said to Matthew"

He got up and followed him
"Matthew got up and followed Jesus." This means
Matthew became Jesus's disciple.

Matthew 9:10

the house
This is probably Matthew's house, but it could also be
Jesus's house. Specify only if needed to avoid confusion.

behold
This marks the beginning of another event in the larger
story. It may involve different people than the previous
events. Your language may have a way of doing this.

sinners
people who did not obey the law of Moses but
committed what others thought were very bad sins

Matthew 9:11

When the Pharisees saw it
"When the Pharisees saw that Jesus was eating with the
tax collectors and sinful people"

Why does your teacher eat with tax collectors and sinners?
The Pharisees use this question to criticize what Jesus is
doing. Alternate translation: "Your teacher should not
eat with tax collectors and sinner."

Matthew 9:12

When Jesus heard this
Here "this" refers to the question the Pharisees asked
about Jesus eating with tax collectors and sinners.

People who are strong in body do not need a physician, only those
who are sick do
Jesus answers with a proverb. He means that he eats
with these kinds of people because he has come to help
sinners.

People who are strong in body
"People who are healthy"

physician
doctor

only those who are sick do
The phrase "need a physician" is understood. Alternate
translation: "only people who are sick need a
physician"

Matthew 9:13

You should go and learn what this means
Jesus is about to quote the scriptures. Alternate
translation: "You should learn the meaning of what God
said in the scriptures"

You should go
Here "you" is plural and refers to the Pharisees.

I desire mercy and not sacrifice
Jesus is quoting what the prophet Hosea wrote in the
scriptures. Here, "I" refers to God.

For I came
Here "I" refers to Jesus.

the righteous
Jesus is using irony. He does not think there are any
people who are righteous and do not need to repent.
Alternate translation: "those who think they are
righteous"

Matthew 9:14

Connecting Statement:
The disciples of John the Baptist question the fact that
Jesus's disciples do not fast.

do not fast
"continue to eat regularly"

Matthew 9:15

Can the sons of the wedding hall mourn while the bridegroom is
still with them?
Jesus uses a question to answer John's disciples. They
all knew that people do not mourn and fast at a
wedding celebration. Jesus uses this proverb to show
that his disciples do not mourn because he is still there
with them. Alternate translation: "The sons of the
wedding hall never mourn while the bridegroom is still
with them."

sons of the wedding hall
This is an idiom that refers to the men who serve a
bridegroom during a wedding. Alternate translation:
"bridegroom's attendants"

the days will come when
This is a way of referring to some time in the future.
Alternate translation: "the time will come when" or
"someday"

the bridegroom will be taken away from them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will not be able to be with them any longer" or "someone will take the bridegroom away from them"

will be taken away

Jesus is probably referring to his own death, but this should not be made explicit here in the translation. To maintain the imagery of a wedding, it is best to just state that the bridegroom will not be there any longer.

Matthew 9:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to answer the question that the disciples of John had asked. He did this by giving two examples of old things and new things that people do not put together.

No man puts a piece of new cloth on an old garment

"No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment" or "People do not sew a piece of new cloth as a patch on an old garment"

an old garment ... the garment

"old clothing ... the clothing"

the patch will tear away from the garment

If someone were to wash the garment, the patch of new cloth would shrink, but the old garment would not shrink. This would tear the patch off the garment and leave a bigger hole.

the patch

"the piece of new cloth." This is the piece of cloth used to cover a hole in the old garment.

a worse tear will be made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this will make the tear worse"

Matthew 9:17

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to answer the question that disciples of John had asked.

Neither do people put new wine into old wineskins

Jesus uses another proverb to answer John's disciples. This means the same as the proverb in Matthew 9:16.

Neither do people put

"Neither does anyone pour" or "People never put"

new wine

This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit. Alternate translation: "grape juice"

old wineskins

This refers to wineskins that have stretched and dried out because they were already used for fermenting wine.

wineskins

"wine bags" or "skin bags." These were bags made out of animal skins.

the wine will be spilled, and the wineskins will be destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and this will ruin the wineskins and spill the wine"

the skins will burst

When the new wine ferments and expands, the skins tear open because they can no longer stretch out.

fresh wineskins

"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that no one has used.

both will be preserved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "this will keep safe both the wineskins and the wine"

Matthew 9:18

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus bringing to life the daughter of a Jewish official after she had died.

these things

This refers to the answer Jesus gave John's disciples about fasting.

behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

bowed down to him

This is a way someone would show respect in Jewish culture.

come and lay your hand on her, and she will live

This shows that the Jewish official believed Jesus had the power to bring his daughter back to life.

Matthew 9:19

his disciples

"Jesus's disciples"

Matthew 9:20

Connecting Statement:

This describes how Jesus healed another woman while he was on the way to the Jewish official's house.

Behold

The word "Behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

who suffered from a discharge of blood

"who had been bleeding" or "who frequently had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

twelve years

"12 years"

his garment

"his robe" or "what he was wearing"

Matthew 9:21

For she had said to herself, "If only I touch his clothes, I will be made well."

She said this to herself before she touched Jesus's garment. This tells why she touched Jesus's garment.

If only I touch his clothes

According to Jewish law, because she was bleeding she was not supposed to touch anyone. She touches his clothes so that Jesus's power would heal her and yet

Matthew 9:22

But Jesus

"The woman was hoping she could touch him secretly, but Jesus"

Daughter

The woman was not Jesus's real daughter. Jesus was speaking to her politely. If this is confusing, it can also be translated "Young woman" or even omitted.

your faith has made you well

"because you believed in me, I will heal you"

the woman was healed from that hour

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her at that moment"

Matthew 9:23

Connecting Statement:

This returns to the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

the flute players and the crowd making a commotion

This was a common way to mourn for someone who has died.

flute players

"people who play flutes"

and the crowd making a commotion

The phrase "making a commotion" applies only to "the crowd" and does not include the flute players.

Alternation translation: "and the crowd making a lot of noise" or "and the noisy crowd"

Matthew 9:24

Go away

Jesus was speaking to many people, so use the plural command form if your language has one.

the girl is not dead, but she is asleep

Jesus is using a play on words. It was common in Jesus's day to refer to a dead person as one who "sleeps." But here the dead girl will get up, as though she had only been sleeping.

Matthew 9:25

When the crowd had been put outside

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After Jesus had sent the crowd outside" or "After the family had sent the people outside"

got up

"got out of bed." This is the same meaning as in Matthew 8:15.

Matthew 9:26

General Information:

This is a summary statement that describes the result of Jesus raising this girl from the dead.

Connecting Statement:

This completes the account of Jesus bringing the daughter of the Jewish official back to life.

The news about this spread into all that region

"The people of that whole region heard about it" or

"The people who saw that the girl was alive started telling everyone in the whole area about it"

Matthew 9:27

Connecting Statement:

This begins the account of Jesus healing two blind men.

As Jesus passed by from there

As Jesus was leaving the region

passed by

"was leaving" or "was going"

followed him

This means they were walking behind Jesus, not necessarily that they had become his disciples.

Have mercy on us

It is implied that they wanted Jesus to heal them.

Son of David

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of David." However, "Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

Matthew 9:28

When Jesus had come into the house

This could be either Jesus's own house or the house in Matthew 9:10.

Yes, Lord

The full content of their answer is not stated, but it is understood. Alternate translation: "Yes, Lord, we believe you can heal us"

Matthew 9:29

touched their eyes and said

It is not clear whether he touched both men's eyes at the same time or used only his right hand to touch one then the other. As the left hand was customarily used for unclean purposes, it is most likely that he used only his right hand. It is also not clear whether he spoke as he was touching them or touched them first and then spoke to them.

Let it be done to you according to your faith

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will do as you have believed" or "Because you believe, I will heal you"

Matthew 9:30

their eyes were opened

This means they were able to see. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God healed their eyes" or "the two blind men were able to see"

See that no one knows about this

Here "See" means "be sure." Alternate translation: "Be sure no one finds out about this" or "Do not tell anyone that I healed you"

Matthew 9:31

But the two men

"The two men did not do what Jesus told them to do. They"

spread the news

"told many people what had happened to them"

Matthew 9:32

Connecting Statement:

This is the account of Jesus healing a demon-possessed man who could not speak, and how people responded.

behold

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

a mute man ... was brought to Jesus

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone brought a mute man ... to Jesus"

mute

not able to talk

possessed by a demon

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom a demon had possessed" or "whom a demon was controlling"

Matthew 9:33

When the demon had been driven out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After Jesus had forced the demon out" or "After Jesus had commanded the demon to leave"

the mute man spoke

"the mute man began to speak" or "the man who had been mute spoke" or "the man, who was no longer mute, spoke"

The crowds were astonished
"The people were amazed"

This has never been seen
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"This has never happened before" or "No one has ever
done anything like this before"

Matthew 9:34

he drives out demons
"he forces demons to leave"

he drives
The pronoun "he" refers to Jesus.

Matthew 9:35

Connecting Statement:
This is the end of the part of the story that began in
[Matthew 8:1]

all the cities
The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize how
very many cities Jesus went to. He did not necessarily
go to every one of them. Alternate translation: "many of
the cities"

cities ... villages
"large villages ... small villages" or "large towns ... small
towns"

the gospel of the kingdom
Here "kingdom" refers to God's rule as king. See how
you translated this in [Matthew 4:23]

all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness
"every disease and every sickness." The words "disease"
and "sickness" are closely related but should be

translated as two different words if possible. "Disease"
is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the
physical weakness or affliction that results from having
a disease.

Matthew 9:36

General Information:
This begins a new part of the story where Jesus teaches
his disciples and sends them to preach and heal as he
has done.

They were like sheep without a shepherd
This simile means they did not have a leader to take
care of them. Alternate translation: "The people did not
have a leader"

Matthew 9:37

General Information:
Jesus uses a proverb about harvesting to tell his
disciples how they should respond to the needs of the
crowds mentioned in the previous section.

The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few
Jesus uses a proverb to respond to what he is seeing.
Jesus means there are a lot of people who are ready to
believe God but only few people to teach them God's
truth.

The harvest is plentiful
"There is plenty of ripe food for someone to collect"

laborers
"workers"

Matthew 9:38

pray to the Lord of the harvest
"pray to God, because he is in charge of the harvest"

Chapter 10

Matthew 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The sending of the twelve disciples

Many verses in this chapter describe how Jesus sent the twelve disciples out. He sent them to tell his message about the kingdom of heaven. They were to tell his message only in Israel and not to share it with the Gentiles.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

"The kingdom of heaven has come near"

No one knows for sure whether the "kingdom of heaven" was present or still coming when Jesus spoke these words. English translations often use the phrase "at hand," but these words can be difficult to translate. Other versions use the phrases "is coming near" and "has come near."

Matthew 10:1

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus sending out his twelve disciples to do his work.

called his twelve disciples together
"summoned his 12 disciples"

gave them authority

Be sure that the text clearly communicates that this authority was 1) to drive out unclean spirits and 2) to heal disease and sickness.

to drive them out

"to make the unclean spirits leave"

all kinds of disease and all kinds of sickness

"every disease and every sickness." The words "disease" and "sickness" are closely related but should be translated as two different words if possible. "Disease"

is what causes a person to be sick. "Sickness" is the physical weakness or affliction that results from having a disease.

Matthew 10:2

General Information:

Here the author provides the names of the twelve apostles as background information.

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here Matthew tells the names of the twelve apostles.

twelve apostles

This is the same group as the "twelve disciples" in Matthew 10:1.

first

This is first in order, not in rank.

Matthew 10:3

Matthew the tax collector

"Matthew, who was a tax collector"

Matthew 10:4

the Zealot

Possible meanings are 1) "the Zealot" is a title that shows that he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) "the Zealot" is a description that shows that he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the zealous one" or "the passionate one"

who would betray him

"who would betray Jesus"

Matthew 10:5

General Information:

Although verse 5 begins by saying that he sent out the twelve, Jesus gave these instructions before he sent them out.

Connecting Statement:

Here Jesus begins to give instructions to his disciples about what they should do and expect when they go to preach.

These twelve Jesus sent out

"Jesus sent out these twelve men" or "It was these twelve men whom Jesus sent out"

sent out

Jesus sent them out for a particular purpose.

He instructed them

"He told them what they needed to do" or "He commanded them"

Matthew 10:6

lost sheep of the house of Israel

This is a metaphor comparing the entire nation of Israel to sheep who have strayed from their shepherd.

house of Israel

This refers to the nation of Israel. Alternate translation: "people of Israel" or "descendants of Israel"

Matthew 10:7

as you go

Here "you" is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

The kingdom of heaven is near

The phrase "kingdom of heaven" refers to God ruling as king. This phrase is only in the book of Matthew. If possible, use the word "heaven" in your translation. See how you translated this in [Matthew 3:2]

Matthew 10:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go to preach.

Heal ... raise ... cleanse ... cast out ... you have received ... give

These verbs and pronouns are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

raise the dead

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "cause the dead to live again"

Freely you have received, freely give

Jesus did not state what the disciples had received or were to give. Some languages may require this information in the sentence. Here "freely" means that there was no payment. Alternate translation: "Freely you have received these things, freely give them to others" or "You received these things without paying, so give them to others without making them pay"

Freely you have received, freely give

Here "received" is a metaphor that represents being made able to do things, and "give" is a metaphor that represents doing things for others. Alternate translation: "Freely you have received the ability to do

these things, freely do them for others" or "Freely I have made you able to do these things, freely do them for others"

Matthew 10:9

your
This refers to the twelve apostles and so is plural.

gold, silver, or copper
These are metals out of which coins were made. This list is a metonym for money, so if the metals are unknown in your area, translate the list as "money."

belts
"money belts." A belt is a long strip of cloth or leather worn around the waist. It was often wide enough that it could be folded and used to carry money. Alternate translation: "purses" or "pouches"

Matthew 10:10

traveling bag
This could either be any bag used to carry things on a journey, or a bag used by someone to collect food or money.

an extra tunic
Use the same word you used for "tunic" in Matthew 5:40.

laborer
worker

his food
Here "food" refers to anything a person needs.
Alternate translation: "what he needs"

Matthew 10:11

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go out to preach.

Whatever city or village you enter
"Whenever you enter a city or village" or "When you go into any city or village"

city ... village
"large village ... small village" or "large town ... small town." See how you translated this in Matthew 9:35.

you
This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

worthy
A "worthy" person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples.

stay there until you leave
The full meaning of the statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "stay in that person's house until you leave the town or village"

Matthew 10:12

As you enter into the house, greet it
The phrase "greet it" means greet the house. A common greeting in those days was "Peace be to this house!" Here "house" represents the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "As you enter the house, greet the people who live in it"

you
This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

Matthew 10:13

your ... your
These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

the house is worthy ... not worthy
Here "the house" represents those who live in the house. A "worthy" person is a person who is willing to welcome the disciples. Jesus compares this person to one who is "not worthy," a person who does not welcome the disciples. Alternate translation: "the people who live in that house receive you well" or "the people who live in that house treat you well"

let your peace come upon it
The word "it" refers to the house, which represents the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "let them receive your peace" or "let them receive the peace that you greeted them with"

if it is not worthy
The word "it" means the house. Here "house" refers to the people who live in the house. Alternate translation: "if they do not receive you well" or "if they do not treat you well"

let your peace return to you
Possible meanings are 1) if the household was not worthy, then God would hold back peace or blessings from that household or 2) if the household was not worthy, then the apostles were supposed to do something, such as asking God not to honor their greeting of peace. If your language has a similar

meaning of taking back a greeting or its effects, that should be used here.

Matthew 10:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about what they should do when they go to preach.

As for those who do not receive you or listen

"If no people in that house or city will receive you or listen"

you ... your

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles.

listen to your words

Here "words" refers to what the disciples say. Alternate translation: "listen to your message" or "listen to what you have to say"

city

You should translate this the same way you did in Matthew 10:11.

shake off the dust from your feet

"shake the dust off your feet as you leave." This is a sign that God has rejected the people of that house or city.

Matthew 10:15

Truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

it will be more bearable

"the suffering will be less"

the land of Sodom and Gomorrah

This refers to the people who lived in Sodom and Gomorrah. Alternate translation: "the people who lived in the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah"

that city

This refers to the people in the city that does not receive the apostles or listen to their message. Alternate translation: "the people of the city that does not receive you"

Matthew 10:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples. Here he begins to tell them about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

See, I send

The word "See" here adds emphasis to what follows.

Alternate translation: "Look, I send" or "Listen, I send" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you. I send"

I send you out

Jesus is sending them out for a particular purpose.

as sheep in the midst of wolves

Sheep are defenseless animals that wolves often attack.

Jesus is stating that people may harm the disciples.

Alternate translation: "as sheep among people who are like dangerous wolves" or "as sheep among people who act the way dangerous animals act"

be as wise as serpents and innocent as doves

Jesus is telling the disciples they must be cautious and harmless among the people. If comparing the disciples to serpents or doves is confusing, it might be better not to state the similes. Alternate translation: "act with understanding and caution, as well as with innocence and virtue"

Matthew 10:17

Watch out for people! They will

You can translate with "because" to show how these two statements relate. Alternate translation: "Watch out for people because they will"

will deliver you up to

"will put you under the control of"

councils

local religious leaders or elders who together keep peace in the community

whip you

"beat you with a whip"

Matthew 10:18

you will be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"they will bring you" or "they will drag you"

for my sake

"because you belong to me" or "because you follow me"

to them and to the Gentiles

The pronoun "them" refers either to the "governors and kings" or to the Jewish accusers.

Matthew 10:19

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

When they deliver you up

"When people take you to the councils." The "people" here are the same "people" as in Matthew 10:17.

you ... you

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

do not be anxious

"do not worry"

how or what you will speak

"how you are to speak or what you are to say." The two ideas may be combined: "what you are to say"

for what to say will be given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for the Holy Spirit will tell you what to say"

at that time

"right then" or "at that time"

Matthew 10:20

you ... your

These are plural and refer to the twelve apostles.

the Spirit of your Father

If necessary, this can be translated as "the Spirit of God your heavenly Father" or a footnote can be added to make it clear that this refers to God the Holy Spirit and not to the spirit of an earthly father.

Father

This is an important title for God.

in you

"through you"

Matthew 10:21

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

Brother will deliver up brother to death

"One brother will deliver up his brother to death" or "Brothers will deliver up their brothers to death." Jesus speaks of something that will happen many times.

deliver up brother to death

The abstract noun "death" can be translated as a verb.

Alternate translation: "hand brother over to authorities who will execute him"

a father his child

These words can be translated as a complete sentence.

Alternate translation: "fathers will deliver up their children to death"

rise up against

"rebel against" or "turn against"

cause them to be put to death

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "have them put to death" or "have the authorities execute them"

Matthew 10:22

You will be hated by everyone

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Everyone will hate you" or "All people will hate you"

You

This is plural and refers to the twelve disciples.

because of my name

Here "name" refers to the entire person. Alternate translation: "because of me" or "because you trust in me"

whoever endures

"whoever stays faithful"

to the end

It is not clear whether the "end" means when a person dies, when the persecution ends, or the end of the age when God shows himself to be king. The main point is that they endure as long as necessary.

that person will be saved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will deliver that person"

Matthew 10:23

in this city

Here "this" does not refer to a specific city. Alternate translation: "in one city"

flee to the next

"flee to the next city"

truly I say to you
"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

before the Son of Man has
Jesus is speaking about himself. Alternate translation:
"before I, the Son of Man, have"

has come
"arrives"

Matthew 10:24

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

A disciple is not greater than his teacher, nor a servant above his master
Jesus is using a proverb to teach his disciples a general truth. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should not expect people to treat them any better than the people treat Jesus.

A disciple is not greater than his teacher
"A disciple is always less important than his teacher" or
"A teacher is always more important than his disciple"

nor a servant above his master
"and a servant is always less important than his master" or "and a master is always more important than his servant"

Matthew 10:25

It is enough for the disciple that he should be like his teacher
"The disciple should be satisfied to become like his teacher"

be like his teacher
If necessary, you can make explicit how the disciple becomes like the teacher. Alternate translation: "know as much as his teacher knows"

the servant like his master
If necessary, you can make explicit how the servant becomes like the master. Alternate translation: "the servant should be satisfied to become only as important as his master"

If they have called the master ... how much worse ... they call ... the members of his household
Again Jesus is emphasizing that since people have mistreated him, his disciples should expect people to treat them the same or worse.

how much worse will be the names they call the members of his household
"the names that they call the members of his household will certainly be much worse" or "they will certainly call the members of his household much worse names"

If they have called
"Since people have called"

the master of the house
Jesus is using this as a metaphor for himself.

Beelzebul
This name can either be 1) transcribed directly as "Beelzebul" or 2) translated with its original, intended meaning of "Satan."

his household
This is a metaphor for Jesus's disciples.

Matthew 10:26

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go out to preach.

do not fear them
Here "them" refers to the people who mistreat followers of Jesus.

there is nothing concealed that will not be revealed, and nothing hidden that will not be known
Both of these statements mean the same thing. Being concealed or hidden represents being kept secret, and being revealed represents being made known. Jesus is emphasizing that God will make all things known. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will reveal the things that people hide"

Matthew 10:27

What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight, and what you hear softly in your ear, proclaim upon the housetops
Both of these statements mean the same thing. Jesus is emphasizing that the disciples should tell everyone what he tells the disciples in private. Alternate translation: "Tell people in the daylight what I tell you in the darkness, and proclaim upon the housetops what you hear softly in your ear"

What I tell you in the darkness, say in the daylight
Here "darkness" is a metonym for "night" which is a metonym for "private." Here "daylight" is a metonym for "public." Alternate translation: "What I tell you privately at night, say in public in the daylight"

what you hear softly in your ear

This is a way of referring to whispering. Alternate translation: "what I whisper to you"

proclaim upon the housetops

Housetops where Jesus lived were flat, and people far away could hear anyone speaking with a loud voice from one. Here "housetops" refers to any place where all people can hear. Alternate translation: "speak loudly in a public place for all to hear"

Matthew 10:28

General Information:

Here Jesus also begins to give reasons why his disciples should not be afraid of the persecution they might experience.

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the persecution they will endure when they go to preach.

Do not be afraid of those who kill the body but are unable to kill the soul

This is not distinguishing between people who cannot kill the soul and people who can kill the soul. No person can kill the soul. Alternate translation: "Do not be afraid of people. They can kill the body, but they cannot kill the soul"

kill the body

This means to cause physical death. If these words are awkward, they can be translated as "kill you" or "kill other people."

body

the part of a person that can be touched, as opposed to the soul or spirit

kill the soul

This means to harm people after they have physically died.

soul

the part of a person that cannot be touched and that lives on after the physical body dies

fear him who is able

You can add "because" to clarify why people should fear God. Alternate translation: "fear God because he is able"

Matthew 10:29

Are not two sparrows sold for a small coin?

Jesus states this proverb as a question to teach his disciples. Alternate translation: "Think about the sparrows. They have so little value that you can buy two of them for only one small coin."

sparrows

These are very small, seed-eating birds. Alternate translation: "small birds"

a small coin

This is often translated as the least valuable coin available in your country. It refers to a copper coin worth about one-sixteenth of a day's wage for a laborer. Alternate translation: "very little money"

not one of them falls to the ground without your Father's knowledge

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "your Father knows when every one of them falls to the ground"

Father

This is an important title for God.

Matthew 10:30

even the hairs of your head are all numbered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God knows even how many hairs are on your head"

numbered

"counted"

Matthew 10:31

You are more valuable than many sparrows

"God values you more than many sparrows"

Matthew 10:32

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

everyone who confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father
"whoever confesses me ... I will also confess before my Father" or "if anyone confesses me ... I will also confess him before my Father"

confesses me before men

"tells others that he is my disciple" or "acknowledges before other people that he is loyal to me"

I will also confess before my Father who is in heaven
You can make explicit the information that is understood. Alternate translation: "I will also acknowledge before my Father who is in heaven that that person belongs to me"

my Father who is in heaven
"my heavenly Father"

Father
This is an important title for God.

Matthew 10:33

he who denies me ... I will also deny before my Father
"whoever denies me ... I will also deny before my Father" or "if anyone denies me ... I will also deny him before my Father"

denies me before men
"denies to other people that he is loyal to me" or
"refuses to acknowledge to others that he is my disciple"

I will also deny before my Father who is in heaven
You can make explicit the information that is understood. Alternate translation: "I will deny before my Father who is in heaven that this person belongs to me"

Matthew 10:34

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

Do not think
"Do not suppose" or "You must not think"

upon the earth
This refers to the people who live on the earth.
Alternate translation: "to the people of the earth" or "to people"

a sword
This refers to division, fighting, and killing among people.

Matthew 10:35

to set ... against
"to cause ... to fight against"

a man against his father
"a son against his father"

Matthew 10:36

A man's enemies
"A person's enemies" or "A person's worst enemies"

those of his own household
"members of his own family"

Matthew 10:37

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

He who loves ... is not worthy
Here "he" means any person in general. Alternate translation: "Those who love ... are not worthy" or "If you love ... you are not worthy"

loves
The word for "love" here refers to "brotherly love" or "love from a friend." Alternate translation: "cares for" or "is devoted to" or "is fond of"

worthy of me
"deserve to belong to me" or "worthy to be my disciple"

Matthew 10:38

pick up his cross and follow after me
"carry his cross and follow me." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: "obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

pick up
"take up" or "pick up and carry"

Matthew 10:39

He who finds his life will lose it. But he who loses ... will find it
Jesus uses a proverb to teach his disciples. This should be translated with as few words as possible. Alternate translation: "Those who find their lives will lose them. But those who lose their lives ... will find them" or "If you find your life you will lose it. But if you lose your life ... you will find it"

finds
This is a metaphor for "keeps" or "saves." Alternate translation: "tries to keep" or "tries to save"

will lose it

This does not mean the person will die. It is a metaphor that means the person will not experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: "will not have true life"

who loses his life

This does not mean to die. It is a metaphor that means a person considers obeying Jesus more important than his own life. Alternate translation: "who denies himself"

for my sake

"because he trusts me" or "on my account" or "because of me." This is the same idea as "for my sake" in Matthew 10:18.

will find it

This metaphor means the person will experience spiritual life with God. Alternate translation: "will find true life"

Matthew 10:40

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to instruct his disciples about the reasons why they should not be afraid of the persecution that they might experience.

He who welcomes

This means he receives someone as a guest.

He who

The word "He" refers to anyone in general. Alternate translation: "Whoever" or "Anyone who" or "The one who"

you

This is plural and refers to the twelve apostles to whom Jesus is speaking.

He who welcomes you welcomes me

Jesus means that when someone welcomes you, it is like welcoming him. Alternate translation: "When someone welcomes you, it is like he is welcoming me" or "If someone welcomes you, it is as if he were welcoming me"

he who welcomes me also welcomes him who sent me

This means that when someone welcomes Jesus, it is like welcoming God. Alternate translation: "When someone welcomes me, it is like he is welcoming God the Father who sent me" or "If someone welcomes me, it is as if he were welcoming God the Father who sent me"

Matthew 10:41

in the name of a prophet

"because that prophet is a prophet" or "because he knows that that person is a prophet." That is, the one who welcomes will receive the reward because he knew that the person he was welcoming was a prophet.

a prophet's reward

This refers to the reward that God gives the prophet, not to the reward that a prophet gives to another person.

in the name of a righteous man

"because that righteous man is a righteous man" or "because he knows that that person is righteous." That is, the one who welcomes will receive the reward because he knew that the person he was welcoming was a righteous man.

a righteous man's reward

This refers to the reward God gives to a righteous person, not a reward that a righteous person gives to another person.

Matthew 10:42

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes instructing his disciples about what they should do and expect when they go to preach.

Whoever gives

"Anyone who gives"

one of these little ones

"one of these lowly ones" or "the least important of these." The phrase "one of these" here refers to one of Jesus's disciples.

in the name of a disciple

"because that disciple" or "because he knows that that person is a disciple." That is, the one who welcomes will receive the reward because he knew that the person he was welcoming was a disciple.

truly I say to you

"I tell you the truth." This phrase adds emphasis to what Jesus says next.

he will ... his reward

Here "he" and "his" refer to the one who is giving.

he will in no way lose

"God will not deny him." This has nothing to do with having a possession taken away. It can be stated in

positive form. Alternate translation: "God will certainly give him"

Chapter 20

Matthew 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The parable of the landowner and his vineyard

Jesus tells this parable ([Matthew 20:1-16](#)) to teach his disciples that what God says is right is different from what people say is right.

Matthew 20:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable about a landowner who hires workers, to illustrate how God will reward those who belong to the kingdom of heaven.

For the kingdom of heaven is like

This is the beginning of a parable. See how you translated the introduction to the parable in [Matthew 13:24]

Matthew 20:2

After he had agreed

"After the landowner had agreed"

one denarius

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages"

he sent them into his vineyard

"he sent them to work in his vineyard"

Matthew 20:3

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

He went out again

"The landowner went out again"

the third hour

The third hour is around nine in the morning.

standing idle in the marketplace

"standing in the marketplace not doing anything" or "standing in the marketplace with no work to do"

marketplace

a large, open-air area where people buy and sell food and other items

Matthew 20:4

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 20:5

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

Again he went out

"Again the landowner went out"

the sixth hour and again the ninth hour

The sixth hour is around noon. The ninth hour is around three in the afternoon.

did the same

This means the landowner went to the marketplace and hired workers.

Matthew 20:6

the eleventh hour

This is about five in the afternoon.

standing idle

"not doing anything" or "not having any work"

Matthew 20:7

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 20:8

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

beginning from the last to the first

You can make clear the understood information.

Alternate translation: "beginning with the workers who started working last, then the workers who started working earlier, and finally the workers who started working first" or "first paying the workers I hired last, then paying the workers I hired earlier in the day, and finally paying the workers I hired first"

Matthew 20:9

who had been hired

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom the landowner hired"

Matthew 20:10

one denarius

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages"

Matthew 20:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

When they received

"When the workers who had worked the longest received"

the landowner

"the vineyard owner"

Matthew 20:12

you have made them equal to us

"you have paid them the same amount of money as you paid us"

we who have borne the burden of the day and the scorching heat
The phrase "borne the burden of the day" is an idiom that means "worked the entire day." Alternate translation: "we who have worked the entire day, even during the hottest part"

Matthew 20:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues telling a parable.

one of them

"one of the workers who had worked the longest"

Friend

Use a word that one man would use to address another man whom he is politely rebuking.

Did you not agree with me for one denarius?

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "We already agreed that I would give you one denarius."

one denarius

This was the daily wage at that time. Alternate translation: "one day's wages"

Matthew 20:14

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 20:15

Connecting Statement:

Jesus concludes his parable about a landowner who hires workers.

Is it not lawful for me to do as I want with what belongs to me?

The landowner uses a question to correct the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "It is lawful for me to do what I want with my own possessions."

Is it not lawful for me

"Do I not have the right" or "Is it not proper." The landowner is reminding the laborers that everyone allows people to do what they wish with their own property. He is not asking if there is a law against what he is doing.

Or are you envious because I am good?

The landowner uses a question to rebuke the workers who were complaining. Alternate translation: "You should not be envious because I am good."

I am good

In the context here, the reader should understand the landowner being "good" as "generous," the opposite of the laborers being "evil," which is "envious."

Matthew 20:16

So the last will be first, and the first last

Here "first" and "last" refer to people's status or importance. Jesus is contrasting people's status now with their status in the kingdom of heaven. See how you translated a similar statement in Matthew 19:30. Alternate translation: "So those who seem to be unimportant now will be the most important, and those who seem to be the most important now will be the least important"

So the last will be first
Here the parable has ended and Jesus is speaking.
Alternate translation: "Then Jesus said, 'So the last will be first'"

Matthew 20:17

Connecting Statement:
Jesus foretells his death and resurrection a third time as he and his disciples travel to Jerusalem.

going up to Jerusalem
Jerusalem was on top of a hill, so people had to travel up to get there.

Matthew 20:18

See, we are going
Jesus uses the word "See" to tell the disciples the must pay attention to what he is about to tell them.

we are going
Here "we" refers to Jesus and the disciples.

the Son of Man will be given over
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone will give the Son of Man over"

Son of Man ... him
Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person.

They will condemn
The chief priests and scribes will condemn Jesus.

Matthew 20:19

and will deliver him to the Gentiles for them to mock
The chief priests and scribes will deliver Jesus to the Gentiles, and the Gentiles will mock him.

to flog
"to whip him" or "to beat him with whips"

third day
"Third" is the ordinal form of "three."

him ... him ... he
Jesus is referring to himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate these in the first person.

he will be raised up
The words "be raised up" are an idiom for "be made alive again." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will raise him up" or "God will make him alive again"

Matthew 20:20

Connecting Statement:
In response to the question that the mother of two of the disciples asks, Jesus teaches his disciples about authority and serving others in the kingdom of heaven.

the sons of Zebedee
This refers to James and John.

Matthew 20:21

at your right hand ... at your left hand
These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor.

in your kingdom
Here "kingdom" refers to Jesus ruling as king. Alternate translation: "when you are king"

Matthew 20:22

You do not know
Here "you" is plural and refers to the mother and the sons.

Are you able
Here "you" is plural, but Jesus is only talking to the two sons.

drink the cup that I am about to drink
To "drink the cup" or "drink from the cup" is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: "suffer what I am about to suffer"

They said
"The sons of Zebedee said" or "James and John said"

Matthew 20:23

My cup you will indeed drink
To "drink a cup" or "drink from a cup" is an idiom that means to experience suffering. Alternate translation: "You will indeed suffer as I will suffer"

right hand ... left hand
These refer to having positions of power, authority, and honor. See how you translated this in [Matthew 20:21]

but it is for those for whom it has been prepared by my Father
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for my Father has prepared those places, and he will give them to whom he chooses"

my Father

This is an important title for God that describes the relationship between God and Jesus.

Matthew 20:24

heard this

"heard what James and John had asked Jesus"

they were very angry with the two brothers

If necessary, you can make explicit why the ten disciples were angry. Alternate translation: "they were very angry with the two brothers because each of them also wanted to sit in a place of honor next to Jesus"

Matthew 20:25

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes teaching his disciples about authority and serving others.

called them

"called the twelve disciples"

the rulers of the Gentiles dominate them

"the Gentile kings forcefully rule over their people"

their important men

"the important men among the Gentiles"

exercise authority over them

"have control over the people"

Matthew 20:26

whoever wishes

"whoever wants" or "whoever desires"

Matthew 20:27

to be first

"to be important"

Matthew 20:28

the Son of Man ... his life

Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. If necessary, you can translate this in the first person.

did not come to be served

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "did not come so that other people would serve him" or "did not come so that other people would serve me"

but to serve

You can make clear the understood information.

Alternate translation: "but to serve other people"

to give his life as a ransom for many

Jesus's life being a "ransom" is a metaphor for his being punished in order to set people free from being punished for their own sins. Alternate translation: "to give his life as a substitute for many" or "to give his life as a substitute to set many free"

to give his life

To give one's life is an idiom meaning to die voluntarily, usually in order to help others. Alternate translation: "to die"

for many

You can make clear the understood information.

Alternate translation: "for many people"

Matthew 20:29

Connecting Statement:

This begins an account of Jesus healing two blind men.

As they went

This refers to the disciples and Jesus.

followed him

"followed Jesus"

Matthew 20:30

There were two blind men sitting

This is sometimes translated as "Behold, there were two blind men sitting." Matthew is alerting us to a new people in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

When they heard

"When the two blind men heard"

was passing by

"was walking by them"

Son of David

Jesus was not David's literal son, so this may be translated as "Descendant of King David." However, "Son of David" is also a title for the Messiah, and the men were probably calling Jesus by this title.

Matthew 20:31

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Matthew 20:32

called to them
"called to the blind men"

do you wish
"do you want"

Matthew 20:33

that our eyes may be opened
The men speak of becoming able to see as if there eyes
were to be opened. Because of Jesus's previous

question, we understand that they were expressing
their desire. Alternate translation: "we want you to
open our eyes" or "we want to be able to see"

Matthew 20:34

being moved with compassion
"having compassion" or "feeling compassion for them"

Chapter 1

Mark 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:2-3, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

"You can make me clean"

Leprosy was a disease of the skin that made a person unclean and unable to properly worship God. Jesus is capable of making people physically "clean" or healthy as well as spiritually "clean" or right with God. (See: clean)

Prophecy

Mark begins this book about Jesus Christ with the words that the prophet Isaiah wrote long before that time. Then he tells how John the Baptist and Jesus Christ fulfilled that prophecy.

Repentance

Repent means stop sinning. John the Baptist taught people to repent so that God would forgive their sins. Jesus taught people to repent and to believe the good news about the kingdom of God.

The work of Jesus

Jesus went around preaching the good news of God, casting demons out of people, and healing people who were sick.

Mark 1:1

General Information:

The author of this book is Mark, also called John Mark. He was the son of one of the women named Mary mentioned in the four Gospels. He was also the nephew of Barnabas. This whole book is about Jesus Christ.

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

Mark 1:2

General Information:

Mark begins this book with the words that the prophet Isaiah wrote long ago about a messenger who would come and tell the people to get ready for the Lord's coming. Verses 4-15 show how this prophecy was fulfilled by John the Baptist and Jesus Christ.

before your face

This is an idiom that means "ahead of you."

your face ... your way

Here the word "your" refers to the Lord and is singular.

the one

This refers to the messenger.

will prepare your way

Doing this represents preparing the people for the Lord's arrival. Alternate translation: "will prepare the people for your arrival"

Mark 1:3

Connecting Statement:

This verse tells how the messenger in verse 2 would prepare the Lord's way.

The voice of one crying out in the wilderness
This phrase can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

Make ready the way of the Lord ... make his paths straight
These two phrases mean the same thing.

Make ready the way of the Lord
"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents being prepared to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation: "Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

Mark 1:4

General Information
The events in Mark 1:4-15 are a fulfillment of what Isaiah had prophesied. John was the "messenger" of verse 2 and "the one calling out in the wilderness" of verse 3.

John came
Translators can make it explicit that John's coming was a fulfillment of Isaiah's prophecy. Alternate translation: "So John came" or "In fulfillment of that prophecy, John came"

Mark 1:5

The whole country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem
The words "The whole country" are a metonym for the people who live in the country and a generalization that refers to a great number of people, not to every single person. Alternate translation: "Many people from Judea and Jerusalem"

They were baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins
They did these things at the same time. The people were baptized because they repented of their sins. Alternate translation: "When they repented of their sins, John baptized them in the Jordan River"

Mark 1:6

he ate locusts and wild honey
Locusts and wild honey were foods that John could find in the wilderness. Wild honey is honey that wild bees make.

Mark 1:7

He was preaching
"John was preaching"

the strap of his sandals I am not worthy to stoop down and untie
John was comparing himself to a servant to show how great the one to come would be. Alternate translation: "I am not even worthy to do the lowly task of removing his shoes"

the strap of his sandals
People often wore sandals that were made of leather and were tied to their feet with leather straps.

stoop down
"bend down"

Mark 1:8

but he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit
John was contrasting how he was purifying people with water with how the one to come would purify people with the Holy Spirit. To baptize with the Holy Spirit is a metaphor meaning that that person would send the Holy Spirit to purify people. The Holy Spirit would then live in them and empower them to stop sinning and to obey God. If possible, use the same word for "baptize" here as you used for John's baptism.

Mark 1:9

It happened in those days
This marks the beginning of a new event in the story.

he was baptized by John
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John baptized him"

Mark 1:10

the Spirit coming down on him like a dove
Possible meanings are 1) this is a simile, and the Spirit descended upon Jesus as a bird descends from the sky toward the ground or 2) the Spirit literally looked like a dove as he descended upon Jesus.

Mark 1:11

A voice came out of the heavens
This represents God speaking. Sometimes people avoid referring directly to God because they respect him. Alternate translation: "God spoke from the heavens"

beloved Son

This is an important title for Jesus. The Father calls Jesus his "beloved Son" because of his eternal love for him.

Mark 1:12

Connecting Statement:

After Jesus's baptism, he is in the wilderness for 40 days and then goes to Galilee to teach and call his disciples.

compelled him to go out
"forced Jesus to go out"

Mark 1:13

He was in the wilderness
"He stayed in the wilderness"

forty days
"40 days"

He was with
"He was among"

Mark 1:14

after John was arrested
"after John was placed in prison." Mark is referring to when King Herod had John arrested. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after King Herod had John arrested" or "after soldiers arrested John"

proclaiming the gospel
"telling many people about the good news"

Mark 1:15

The time is fulfilled
"It is now time"

the kingdom of God is near
Possible meanings are 1) God was beginning to rule. Alternate translation: "God is beginning to rule over all" or 2) God would soon rule over all. Alternate translation: "God is about to rule over all"

Mark 1:16

he saw Simon and Andrew
"Jesus saw Simon and Andrew"

casting a net in the sea
The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "throwing a net into the water to catch fish"

Mark 1:17

Come, follow me
"Follow me" or "Come with me"

I will make you fishers of men
This metaphor means Simon and Andrew will teach people God's true message, so others will also follow Jesus. Alternate translation: "I will teach you to gather men to me like you gather fish"

men
human beings, persons, people, not specifically males

Mark 1:18

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:19

in the boat
This was probably James and John's boat.

mending the nets
"repairing the nets"

Mark 1:20

called them
It may be helpful to state clearly why Jesus called to James and John. Alternate translation: "called them to come with him"

hired servants
"servants who worked for them"

they followed him
James and John went with Jesus.

Mark 1:21

Connecting Statement:
Jesus teaches in the synagogue of the town of Capernaum on the Sabbath. By sending a demon out of a man he amazes the people in all the nearby area around Galilee.

came into Capernaum
"arrived at Capernaum"

Mark 1:22

for he was teaching them as someone who has authority and not as the scribes

The idea of "teach" can be stated clearly when talking about "someone who has authority" and "the scribes." Alternate translation: "for he was teaching them as someone who has authority teaches and not as the scribes teach"

Mark 1:23

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:24

What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?

The demon asked this rhetorical question meaning that there was no reason for Jesus to interfere with him or any other demon. Alternate translation: "Jesus of Nazareth, leave us alone! There is no reason for you to interfere with us."

we ... us

These pronouns are exclusive. They refer to the demon inside the man and all other demons, but do not include the listener.

Have you come to destroy us?

The demon asked this rhetorical question to urge Jesus not to harm him or any other demon. Alternate translation: "Do not destroy us!"

Mark 1:25

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:26

threw him down

Here the word "him" refers to the demon-possessed man.

and went out from him while crying out with a loud voice
"and cried out with a loud voice as it went out from him"

Mark 1:27

so they asked each other, "What is this? ... they obey him!"

The people used a question to show how amazed they were. It can be expressed as an exclamation. Alternate translation: "so they said to each other, 'This is amazing! ... they obey him!'"

A new teaching with authority!

The people used this exclamation to express their amazement at Jesus' teaching. It can also be expressed as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "He gives a new teaching, and he speaks with authority!" or "He teaches something new, and he has authority!"

He even commands the unclean spirits and they obey him!

This was evidence of Jesus' authority.

Mark 1:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:29

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:30

Now Simon's mother-in-law was lying sick with a fever

The word "Now" marks a pause in the story. In this sentence, Mark introduces Simon's mother-in-law to the story and gives background information about her.

Mark 1:31

raised her up

"caused her to stand" or "made her able to get out of bed"

the fever left her

You may want to make explicit who healed her.

Alternate translation: "Jesus healed her of the fever"

she started serving them

You may want to make explicit that she served food.

Alternate translation: "she provided them with food and drinks"

Mark 1:32

they brought to him

"the people brought to Jesus"

all who were sick or possessed by demons

The word "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize the great number of people who came. Alternate translation: "many who were sick or possessed by demons"

Mark 1:33

The whole city gathered together at the door
The word "city" is a metonym for the people who lived in the city. Here the word "whole" is probably a generalization to emphasize that most people from the city gathered. Alternate translation: "Many people from that city gathered outside the door"

Mark 1:34

He healed
"Jesus healed"

Mark 1:35

Connecting Statement:
Jesus takes time to pray in the midst of his time of healing people. He then goes to towns throughout Galilee to preach, heal, and cast out demons.

He got up
"Jesus got up"

a solitary place
"a place where he could be alone"

Mark 1:36

Simon and those who were with him
Here "him" refers to Simon. Also, those with him include Andrew, James, John, and possibly other people.

Mark 1:37

Everyone is looking for you
The word "Everyone" is an exaggeration to emphasize that many people were looking for Jesus. Alternate translation: "Many people are looking for you"

Mark 1:38

General Information:
Here the words "he" and "I" refer to Jesus.

Let us go elsewhere
"We need to go to some other place." Here Jesus uses the word "us" to refer to himself, along with Simon, Andrew, James, and John.

Mark 1:39

He went throughout all of Galilee
The words "throughout all" are an exaggeration used to emphasize that Jesus went to many locations during his

ministry. Alternate translation: "He went to many places in Galilee"

Mark 1:40

A leper came to him. He was begging him; he knelt down and said to him
"A leper came to Jesus. He knelt down and was begging Jesus and said"

If you are willing, you can make me clean
In the first phrase, the words "to make me clean" are understood because of the second phrase. Alternate translation: "If you are willing to make me clean, then you can make me clean"

are willing
"want" or "desire"

you can make me clean
In biblical times, a person who had any of certain skin diseases was considered unclean until his skin had healed enough that he was no longer contagious. Alternate translation: "you can heal me"

Mark 1:41

Moved with compassion, Jesus
Here the word "moved" is an idiom meaning to feel emotion about another's need. Alternate translation: "Having compassion for him, Jesus" or "Jesus felt compassion for the man, so he"

I am willing
It may be helpful to state what Jesus is willing to do. Alternate translation: "I am willing to make you clean"

Mark 1:42

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 1:43

General Information:
The word "him" used here refers to the leper whom Jesus healed.

Mark 1:44

Be sure to say nothing to anyone
"Be sure to not say anything to anyone"

show yourself to the priest
Jesus told the man to show himself to the priest so that the priest could look at his skin to see if his leprosy was really gone. The law of Moses required people to

present themselves to the priest if they had been unclean but were no longer unclean.

show yourself

The word "yourself" here represents the skin of the leper. Alternate translation: "show your skin"

a testimony to them

It is best to use the pronoun "them," if possible, in your language. Possible meanings are 1) "a testimony to the priests" or 2) "a testimony to the people."

Mark 1:45

But he went out

The word "he" refers to the man Jesus healed.

began to declare it freely

Here "declare it freely" is a metaphor for telling people in many places about what had happened. Alternate translation: "began to tell people in many places about what Jesus had done"

so much so that

The man spread the news so much that

that Jesus could no longer enter a town openly

This was the result of the man spreading the news so much. Here "openly" is a metaphor for "publicly." Jesus could not enter the towns because many people would crowd around him. Alternate translation: "that Jesus could no longer enter a town publicly" or "that Jesus could no longer enter the towns in a way that many people would see him"

remote places

"lonely places" or "places where no one lived"

from everywhere

The word "everywhere" is a hyperbole used to emphasize how very many places the people came from. Alternate translation: "from all over the region"

Chapter 2

Mark 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

"Sinners"

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: fast)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

The Jewish leaders used rhetorical questions to show that they were angry because of what Jesus said and did and that they did not believe that he was God's Son

Mark 2:1

Connecting Statement:

After preaching and healing people throughout Galilee, Jesus returns to Capernaum, where he heals and forgives the sin of a paralyzed man.

it was heard that he was at home

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people there heard that he was staying at his home"

Mark 2:2

So many gathered there

The word "there" refers to the house that Jesus stayed at in Capernaum. Alternate translation: "So many people gathered there" or "So many people came to the house"

there was no more space

This refers to there being no space inside the house. Alternate translation: "there was no more room for them inside"

he spoke the word to them

"Jesus spoke his message to them"

Mark 2:3

four people were carrying him

"four of them were carrying him." It is likely that there were more than four people within the group that brought the man to Jesus.

were bringing a paralyzed man

"were bringing a man who was unable to walk or use his arms"

Mark 2:4

could not get near him

"could not get close to where Jesus was"

they removed the roof that was above Jesus, and after they made an opening, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was lying on. Houses where Jesus lived had flat roofs made of clay and covered with tiles. Alternate translation: "they removed the tiles from the part of the roof above where Jesus was. And when they had dug through the clay roof, they lowered the mat the paralyzed man was

lying on" or "they made a hole in the roof above Jesus, and then they lowered the paralyzed man on the mat"

Mark 2:5

Seeing their faith

"Seeing the men's faith." Possible meanings are 1) that only the men who carried the paralyzed man had faith or 2) that the paralyzed man and the men who brought him to Jesus all had faith.

Son

The word "Son" here shows Jesus cared for the man as a father cares for a son. Alternate translation: "My son"

your sins are forgiven

Jesus did not clearly say who was forgiving the man's sins. Alternate translation: "your sins are gone" or "you do not have to pay for your sins" or "your sins do not count against you"

Mark 2:6

reasoned in their hearts

Here "their hearts" is a metonym for the people's thoughts. Alternate translation: "were thinking to themselves"

Mark 2:7

How can this man speak this way?

The scribes used this question to show their anger that Jesus said "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "This man should not speak this way!"

Who can forgive sins but God alone?

The scribes used this question to say that since only God can forgive sins, then Jesus should not say "Your sins are forgiven." Alternate translation: "Only God can forgive sins!"

Mark 2:8

in his spirit

"in his inner being" or "in himself"

they were thinking within themselves

Each of the scribes was thinking to himself; they were not talking to each other.

Why are you thinking this in your hearts?

Jesus uses this question to tell the scribes that what they are thinking is wrong. Alternate translation: "What you are thinking is wrong." or "Do not think that I am blaspheming."

this in your hearts

The word "hearts" is a metonym for their inner thoughts and desires. Alternate translation: "this inside yourselves" or "these things"

Mark 2:9

Which is easier, to say to the paralyzed man, ... take up your mat and walk?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "I just said to the paralyzed man, 'Your sins are forgiven.' You may think that it is harder to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk,' because the proof of whether or not I can heal him will be shown by whether or not he gets up and walks." or "You may think that it is easier to say to the paralyzed man 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up, take up your mat and walk.'"

Mark 2:10

But in order that you may know

"But so that you may know." The word "you" refers to the scribes and the crowd.

that the Son of Man has authority

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man." Alternate translation: "that I am the Son of Man and I have authority"

Mark 2:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 2:12

in front of everyone

"while all the people there were watching"

Mark 2:13

Connecting Statement:

Jesus is teaching the crowd beside the Sea of Galilee, and he calls Levi to follow him.

the lake

This is the Sea of Galilee, which is also known as the Lake of Gennesaret.

the crowd came to him

"the people went where he was"

Mark 2:14

Levi son of Alphaeus
Alpheus was Levi's father.

the tax collector's tent
We do not know what kind of a structure this was or what it was made of. It may have been a tent or booth. It probably included a table and some kind of protection from sun and rain.

Mark 2:15

Connecting Statement:
It is now later in the day, and Jesus is at Levi's house for a meal.

Levi's house
"the home of Levi"

sinners
In this verse, the word "sinners" refers to people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

for there were many and they followed him
Possible meanings are 1) "for there were many tax collectors and sinful people who followed Jesus" or 2) "for Jesus had many disciples and they followed him."

Mark 2:16

Why does he eat with tax collectors and sinners?
The scribes and Pharisees asked this question to show they disapproved of Jesus's hospitality. This can be worded as a statement. Alternate translation: "He should not eat with tax collectors and sinners!"

Mark 2:17

Connecting Statement:
Jesus responds to what the scribes had said to his disciples about his eating with tax collectors and sinful people.

he said to them
"he said to the scribes"

People who are strong in body do not need a physician; only people who are sick need one
Jesus used this proverb about sick people and doctors to teach them that only people who know that they are sinful realize that they need Jesus.

strong in body
"healthy"

I did not come to call righteous people, but sinners
Jesus expects his hearers to understand he came for those who want help. Alternate translation: "I came for people who understand they are sinful, not for people who believe they are righteous"

but sinners
The words "I came to call" are understood from the phrase before this. Alternate translation: "but I came to call sinners"

Mark 2:18

Connecting Statement:
Jesus tells parables to show why his disciples should not fast while he is with them.

the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees
These two phrases refer to the same group of people, but the second is more specific. Both refer to the followers of the Pharisee sect, but they do not focus on the leaders of the Pharisees. Alternate translation: "the disciples of the Pharisees were fasting ... the disciples of the Pharisees"

Some people
"Some men." It is best to translate this phrase without specifying exactly who these men are. If in your language you have to be more specific, the possible meanings are 1) these men were not among John's disciples or the disciples of the Pharisees or 2) these men were among John's disciples.

came and said to him
"came and said to Jesus"

Mark 2:19

Can the wedding attendants fast while the bridegroom is still with them?
Jesus uses this question to remind the people of something they already know and to encourage them to apply it to him and his disciples. Alternate translation: "Wedding attendants do not fast while the bridegroom is with them. Rather they celebrate and feast."

Mark 2:20

the bridegroom will be taken away
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the bridegroom will go away"

away from them ... they will fast
The words "them" and "they" refer to the wedding attendants.

Mark 2:21

No one sews a piece of new cloth on an old garment
Sewing a piece of new cloth on an old garment will make the hole on an old garment worse if the piece of new cloth has not yet shrunk. Both the new cloth and old garment will be ruined.

Mark 2:22

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins to tell another parable. This one is about putting new wine into old wineskins rather than into new wineskins.

new wine
"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not fermented yet. If grapes are unknown in your area, use the general term for fruit juice.

old wineskins
This refers to wineskins that have been used many times.

wineskins
These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "skin bags."

the wine will burst the skins
New wine expands as it ferments. If it is put in new wineskins, the wineskins will stretch. But old wineskins are brittle and cannot stretch. If new wine is poured into old wineskins, the wineskins will tear open.

are lost
"will be ruined"

fresh wineskins
"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to wineskins that have never been used.

Mark 2:23

Connecting Statement:
Jesus gives the Pharisees an example from scripture to show why the disciples were not wrong to pick grain on the Sabbath.

began picking heads of grain
The disciples were picking heads of grain to eat the kernels, or seeds, in them while they were walking. They were not harvesting the grain to take it home. Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

heads of grain
The "heads" are the topmost part of the wheat plant, which is a kind of tall grass. The heads hold the mature grain or seeds of the plant.

as they made their way
"as they walked along"

Mark 2:24

Connecting Statement:
The Pharisees ask a question about what the disciples were doing (verse 23).

doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day
Plucking grain in others' fields and eating it (verse 23) was not considered stealing. The question was whether it was lawful to do this on the Sabbath.

Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful on the Sabbath day?
The Pharisees ask Jesus a question to condemn him. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Look! They are breaking the Jewish law concerning the Sabbath."

Look
"Look at this" or "Listen." This is a word used to get the attention of someone to show them something. If there is a word in your language that is used to draw a person's attention to something, you could use that here.

Mark 2:25

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins to scold the Pharisees by asking them a question.

He said to them
"Jesus said to the Pharisees"

Have you never read what David did
This question ends in 2:26. Jesus is reminding the scribes and Pharisees of something David did on the Sabbath. If this rhetorical question is translated as a statement or a command, then the question mark in 2:26 should become a period. Alternate translation: "You have read what David did" or "Remember what you read about what David did"

read what David did
Jesus refers to reading about David in the Old Testament. This can be translated showing the implicit information. Alternate translation: "read in the scriptures what David did"

Mark 2:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he began in verse 25.

how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him?
This question began in 2:25. If you translated the rhetorical question as a statement or command in verse 25, then the question mark here should become a period. Alternate translation: "how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him."

how he went into the house of God ... to those who were with him
This can be expressed as a statement separate from verse 25. If so, verse 25 should end with a period instead of a dash. Alternate translation: "He went into the house of God ... to those who were with him"

how he went

The word "he" refers to David.

the bread of the presence

This refers to the twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God.

Mark 2:27

The Sabbath was made for mankind

Jesus makes clear why God established the Sabbath.

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God made the Sabbath for mankind"

mankind

"man" or "people" or "the needs of people." This word refers to both men and women.

not mankind for the Sabbath

The words "was made" are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated here. Alternate translation: "mankind was not made for the Sabbath" or "God did not make mankind for the Sabbath"

Mark 2:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Chapter 3

Mark 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Sabbath

It was against the law of Moses to do work on the Sabbath. The Pharisees believed healing a sick person on the Sabbath was "work," so they said that Jesus did wrong when he healed a person on the Sabbath. (See: lawofmoses)

"Blasphemy against the Spirit"

No one knows for sure what actions people perform or what words they say when they commit this sin. However, they probably insult the Holy Spirit and his work. Part of the Holy Spirit's work is to make people understand that they are sinners and that they need to have God forgive them. Therefore, anyone who does not try to stop sinning is probably committing blasphemy against the Spirit. (See: blasphemy and holyspirit)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

Mark 3:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath in the synagogue and shows how he feels about what the Pharisees had done with the Sabbath rules. The Pharisees and Herodians begin planning to put Jesus to death.

a man with a withered hand

"a man with a crippled hand"

Mark 3:2

Some people watched him closely to see if he would heal him

"Some people watched Jesus closely to see if he would heal the man with the withered hand"

Some people

"Some of the Pharisees." Later, in Mark 3:6, these people are identified as Pharisees.

so that they could accuse him

If Jesus were to heal the man that day, the Pharisees would accuse him of breaking the law by working on the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "so that they could accuse him of wrongdoing" or "so that they could accuse him of breaking the law"

Mark 3:3

in the middle of everyone

"in the middle of this crowd"

Mark 3:4

Is it lawful to do good on the Sabbath ... or to kill?

Jesus said this to challenge them. He wanted them to acknowledge that it is lawful to heal people on the Sabbath.

to do good on the Sabbath day or to do harm ... to save a life or to kill

These two phrases are similar in meaning, except that the second is more extreme.

to save a life or to kill

It may be helpful to repeat "is it lawful," as that is the question Jesus is asking again in another way. Alternate translation: "is it lawful to save a life or to kill"

to save a life

"to save someone's life" or "to save someone from dying"

But they were silent

"But they refused to answer him"

Mark 3:5

He looked around

"Jesus looked around"

was grieved

"was deeply saddened"

by their hardness of heart

This metaphor describes how the Pharisees were unwilling to have compassion on the man with the withered hand. Alternate translation: "because they were unwilling to have compassion on the man"

Stretch out your hand

"Reach out with your hand"

his hand was restored

This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus restored his hand" or "Jesus made his hand the way it was before"

Mark 3:6

began to plot

"began to make a plan"

the Herodians

This is the name of an informal political party that supported Herod Antipas.

how they might put him to death

"how they might kill Jesus"

Mark 3:7

Connecting Statement:

A great crowd of people follows Jesus, and he heals many people.

the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

Mark 3:8

Idumea

This is the region, previously known as Edom, which covered the southern half of the province of Judea.

the things he was doing

This refers to the miracles Jesus was performing.

Alternate translation: "the great miracles that Jesus was performing"

came to him

"came to where Jesus was"

Mark 3:9

General Information:

Verse 9 tells what Jesus asked his disciples to do because of the large crowd of people around him. Verse 10 tells why such a large crowd was around Jesus. The information in these verses can be reordered to present the events in the order they happened, as in the UDB.

He told his disciples to have a small boat ... not press against him

As the large crowd was pushing forward toward Jesus, he was in danger of being crushed by them. They would not crush him intentionally. It was just that there were so many people.

Mark 3:10

For he healed many, so that everyone ... to touch him
This tells why so many people were crowding around Jesus that he thought they might crush him. Alternate translation: "For, because Jesus had healed many people, everyone ... to touch him"

For he healed many
The word "many" refers to the large number of people Jesus had already healed. Alternate translation: "For he healed many people"

everyone who had afflictions eagerly approached him in order to touch him
They did this because they believed that touching Jesus would make them well. This can be expressed clearly. Alternate translation: "all the sick people pushed forward eagerly trying to touch him so that they might be healed"

Mark 3:11

saw him
"saw Jesus"

they fell down ... cried out, and they said
Here "they" refers to the unclean spirits. It is they who are causing the people they possess to do things. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "they caused the people they were possessing to fall down before him and to cry out to him"

they fell down before him
The unclean spirits did not fall down before Jesus because they loved him or wanted to worship him. They fell down before him because they were afraid of him.

You are the Son of God
Jesus has power over unclean spirits because he is the "Son of God."

Son of God
This is an important title for Jesus.

Mark 3:12

He strictly ordered them
"Jesus strictly ordered the unclean spirits"

not to make him known
"not to reveal who he was"

Mark 3:13

General Information:
Jesus chooses the men he wants to be his apostles.

Mark 3:14

so that they might be with him and he might send them to proclaim the message
"so that they would be with him and he could send them to proclaim the message"

Mark 3:15

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 3:16

Simon, to whom he gave the name Peter
The author begins to list the names of the twelve apostles. Simon is the first man listed.

Mark 3:17

to whom he gave
The phrase "to whom" refers to both James son of Zebedee and his brother John.

the name Boanerges, that is, Sons of Thunder
Jesus called them this because they were like thunder. Alternate translation: "the name Boanerges, which means men who are like thunder" or "the name Boanerges, which means Thunder Men"

Mark 3:18

Thaddaeus
This is the name of a man.

Mark 3:19

who would betray him
"who would betray Jesus" The word "who" refers to Judas Iscariot.

Mark 3:20

Then he went home
"Then Jesus went to the house where he was staying."

they could not even eat bread
The word "bread" represents food. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples could not eat at all" or "they could not eat anything"

Mark 3:21

they went out to seize him

Members of his family went to the house so that they could take hold of him and force him to go home with them.

for they said

Possible meanings for the word "they" are 1) his relatives or 2) some people in the crowd.

out of his mind

This idiom describes how they thought he was acting. Alternate translation: "crazy" or "insane"

Mark 3:22

By the ruler of the demons he drives out demons

"By the power of Beelzebul, who is the ruler of the demons, Jesus drives out demons"

Mark 3:23

Connecting Statement:

Jesus explains with a parable why it is foolish for people to think that Jesus is controlled by Satan.

Jesus called them to himself

"Jesus called the people to come to him"

How can Satan cast out Satan?

Jesus asked this rhetorical question in response to the scribes saying that he cast out demons by Beelzebul. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Satan cannot cast out himself!" or "Satan does not go against his own evil spirits!"

Mark 3:24

If a kingdom is divided against itself

The word "kingdom" is a metonym for the people who live in the kingdom. Alternate translation: "If the people who live in a kingdom are divided against each other"

cannot stand

Here "stand" is a metaphor that means endure, or continue to exist. Alternate translation: "cannot endure" or "will end"

Mark 3:25

house

This is a metonym for the people who live in a house. Alternate translation: "family" or "household"

Mark 3:26

If Satan has risen up against himself and is divided

The word "himself" is a reflexive pronoun that refers back to Satan, and it is also a metonym for his evil spirits. Alternate translation: "If Satan and his evil spirits were fighting one another" or "If Satan and his evil spirits have risen up against each other and are divided"

is not able to stand

Here "stand" is a metaphor that means endure, or stay strong. Alternate translation: "cannot endure" or "cannot stay strong"

Mark 3:27

plunder

to steal a person's valuables and possessions

Mark 3:28

Truly I say to you

This indicates that the statement that follows is especially true and important.

the sons of men

"those who have been born of man." This expression is used to emphasize peoples' humanity. Alternate translation: "people"

utter

speak

Mark 3:29

will never have forgiveness

The idea in the noun forgiveness can be expressed with a phrase. Alternate translation: "will never be forgiven"

is guilty of an eternal sin

"Eternal sin" is a metonym for "a sin that will be eternally punished." Alternate translation: "is guilty of a sin that will be punished eternally"

Mark 3:30

they were saying

"the people were saying"

has an unclean spirit

This is an idiom that means to be possessed by an unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "is possessed by an unclean spirit"

Mark 3:31

Then his mother and his brothers came
"Then Jesus's mother and brothers came"

They sent for him, summoning him
"They sent someone inside to tell him that they were
outside and to have him come out to them"

Mark 3:32

are looking for you
"are asking for you"

Mark 3:33

Who are my mother and my brothers?
Jesus uses this question to teach the people. Alternate
translation: "I will tell you who are really my mother
and brothers."

Mark 3:34

here are my mother and my brothers
This is a metaphor that means Jesus's disciples belong
to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than
belonging to his physical family.

Mark 3:35

whoever does ... that person is
"those who do ... they are"

that person is my brother, and sister, and mother
This is a metaphor that means Jesus's disciples belong
to Jesus's spiritual family. This is more important than
belonging to his physical family. Alternate translation:
"that person is like a brother, sister, or mother to me"

Chapter 4

Mark 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Mark 4:3-10 forms one parable. The parable is explained in 4:14-23.

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:12, which is a quotation from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth.

Mark 4:1

Connecting Statement:

As Jesus teaches from a boat at the seaside, he tells them the parable of the soils.

the sea

This is the Sea of Galilee.

it sprang up

"the seed that landed on the rocky ground began to grow quickly"

soil

This refers to the loose dirt on the ground in which you can plant seeds.

Mark 4:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 4:6

the plants were scorched

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it scorched the young plants"

Mark 4:3

Listen!

"Pay attention!"

because they had no root, they dried up

"because the young plants had no roots, they dried up"

A farmer went out to sow his seed

This means that he tossed seeds onto the ground so they could grow.

Mark 4:7

Other seed ... choked it ... it did not produce

"Other seeds ... choked them ... they did not produce"

Mark 4:4

some seed ... devoured it

"some seeds ... devoured them"

Mark 4:8

yielding thirty, sixty, and even a hundred times

The amount of grain produced by each plant is being compared to the single seed from which it grew. Ellipsis is used here to shorten the phrases but they can be written out. Alternate translation: "Some plants bore thirty times as much as the seed that the man had planted, some produced sixty times as much grain, and some produced a hundred times as much grain"

Mark 4:5

Other seed ... it did not have ... it sprang ... it did not have

"Other seeds ... they did not have ... they sprang ... they did not have"

thirty ... sixty ... a hundred
"30 ... 60 ... 100." These may be written as numerals.

Mark 4:9

Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear
Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "has ears" is a metonym for being willing to understand and obey. Alternate translation: "Whoever is willing to listen, listen" or "Whoever is willing to understand, let him understand and obey"

Whoever has ... let him hear
Since Jesus wanted his audience to pay attention, this can also be expressed with the word "you." Alternate translation: "If you have ears to hear, then hear" or "If you are willing to understand, then understand and obey"

Mark 4:10

When Jesus was alone
This does not mean that Jesus was completely alone; rather, it means that the crowds were gone and Jesus was only with the twelve and some of his other close followers.

Mark 4:11

To you is given
This can be stated in active form. "God has given you" or "I have given you"

to those outside
"to those outside our group" or "to those who are not among us." This refers to all the other people who were not among the twelve or Jesus's other close followers.

everything is in parables
It can be stated that Jesus gives the parables to the people. Alternate translation: "I have spoken everything in parables"

Mark 4:12

when they look ... when they hear
It is assumed that Jesus is speaking about the people looking at what he shows them and hearing what he tells them. Alternate translation: "when they look at what I am doing ... when they hear what I am saying"

they look, but do not see
Possible meanings are 1) the word "look" here refers to making an effort to see and "see" refers to actually being able to see what they have looked for and is a metaphor for "understand." Alternate translation: "they look, but they do not understand" Or 2) here the word translated "look" refers to seeing what one is looking at and the word translated "see" refers to understanding what they are seeing.

they would turn
"they would turn to God." Here "turn" is a metaphor for "repent." Alternate translation: "they would repent"

Mark 4:13

He said to them
"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

Do you not understand this parable? How then will you understand all the parables?
Jesus used these questions to show how sad he was that his disciples could not understand his parable.
Alternate translation: "If you cannot understand this parable, think about how hard it will be for you to understand all the other parables."

Mark 4:14

General Information:
Jesus begins to explain the parable he told in [Mark 4:3-8]

The sower
"The farmer who sows his seed"

sows the word
Sowing God's word represents teaching it. Alternate translation: "teaches people God's word" or "represents one who teaches God's word"

the word
The phrase "the word" represents God's message.
Alternate translation: "God's message"

Mark 4:15

These are the ones beside the road
Here Jesus speaks about people. Alternate translation: "These people are the seeds that fall beside the road" or "These people are like seeds that fall beside a road"

When they hear
"When they hear the word"

Mark 4:16

these are the seed sown on the rocky ground
"These people are the seeds that fall on the rocky ground" or "These people are like seeds that fall on the rocky ground"

Mark 4:17

they do not have root in themselves
Having no root represents not fully understanding or believing God's word. Alternate translation: "they are like young plants that have no roots"

endure
In this parable, "endure" means "continue to believe."
Alternate translation: "continue in their belief"

tribulation or persecution arises on account of the word
The phrase "on account of the word" means "because they believe God's message. Alternate translation: "tribulation or persecution comes because they believe God's message"

they immediately fall away
In this parable, "fall away" means "stop believing God's message"

Mark 4:18

Still others are the ones sown among the thorns
"Still other people are the seeds that fall among the thorns" or "And other people are like seeds that fall among the thorns"

Mark 4:19

the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke the word
The words "cares," "deceitfulness," and "desires" are spoken of as if they were weeds that wrap around plants and keep them from growing. Alternate translation: "the cares of the world and the deceitfulness of wealth and the desires for other things come in and choke God's message in their lives like thorns that choke young plants"

the cares of the world
"the worries in this life" or "the concerns about this present life"

the deceitfulness of wealth
"the lie that wealth will make them happy" or "the lie that having many possessions will make them happy"

it is unproductive
"the word does not produce a crop in them." The word being unproductive means that it does not have an effect on the person's life.

Mark 4:20

Those that were sown on the good soil are the ones who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit
"The seeds that fall on the good soil represent people who hear the word, accept it and bear fruit"

and bear fruit, thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much
Fruit represents the results or effect of God's word in a person's life. The numbers tell how much fruit there might be, or how great the results might be. Alternate translation: "and produce good results, like plants that bear thirty, sixty, or even a hundred times as much fruit as what was sown"

Mark 4:21

Jesus said to them
"Jesus said to the crowd"

Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket or under the bed?
This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You certainly do not bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under a bed!"

Mark 4:22

For nothing is hidden that will not be known ... come out into the open
This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "For everything that is hidden will be made known, and everything that is secret will come out into to open"

nothing is hidden ... nothing is secret
"there is nothing that is hidden ... there is nothing that is secret" Both of the phrases have the same meaning. Jesus is emphasizing that everything that is secret will be made known.

Mark 4:23

If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear
Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is important and may take some effort to understand and put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a metonym for the willingness to understand and obey. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9]

If anyone ... let him hear
Since Jesus wanted his audience to pay attention, this can also be expressed with the word "you." See how you translated a similar phrase in [Mark 4:9]

Mark 4:24

He said to them
"Jesus said to the crowd"

for the measure you use
Possible meanings are 1) Jesus is talking about a literal measure and giving generously to others or 2) this is a metaphor in which Jesus speaks of "understanding" as if it were "measuring."

will be measured to you, and more will be added to you.
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will measure that amount for you, and he will add it to you"

Mark 4:25

to him will be given more ... even what he has will be taken
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to him God will give more ... from him God will take away" or "God will give more to him ... God will take away from him"

Mark 4:26

Connecting Statement:
Jesus tells the people parables to teach them about the kingdom of God. Later he explains the parables to his disciples.

like a man who sows his seed
When someone sows seed, he plants the seed by scattering it on the ground. Alternate translation: "like a farmer who plants his seed" or "like a farmer who scatters his seed"

Mark 4:27

He sleeps at night and gets up by day
This is something that the man habitually does.
Alternate translation: "He sleeps each night and gets up each day" or "He sleeps each night and gets up the next day"

gets up by day
"is up during the day" or "is active during the day"

though he does not know how
"though the man does not know how the seed sprouts and grows"

Mark 4:28

the blade
the stalk or sprout

the ear
the head on the stalk or the part of the plant that holds the fruit

Mark 4:29

he immediately sends in the sickle
Here "the sickle" is a metonym that stands for the farmer or the people whom the farmer sends out to harvest the grain. Alternate translation: "he immediately goes into the field with a sickle to harvest the grain" or "he immediately sends people with sickles into the field to harvest the grain"

sickle
a curved blade or a sharp hook used to cut grain

because the harvest has come
Here the words "has come" are part of an idiom that means it is time for something. Alternative translation: "because it is time for harvesting the grain" or "because the grain is ready to be gathered"

Mark 4:30

To what can we compare the kingdom of God, or what parable can we use to explain it?
Jesus asked this question to cause his hearers to think about what the kingdom of God is like. Alternate translation: "With this parable I can explain what the kingdom of God is like."

Mark 4:31

when it is sown
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when someone sows it" or "when someone plants it"

Mark 4:32

it forms large branches
The mustard tree is described as causing its branches to grow large. Alternate translation: "it has large branches"

Mark 4:33

he spoke the word to them
"Word" here is a synecdoche for "the message of God."
The word "them" refers to the crowds. Alternate translation: "he taught them the message of God"

as much as they were able to understand
"and if they were able to understand some, he kept
telling them more"

Mark 4:34

when he was alone
This means that he was away from the crowds, but his
disciples were still with him.

he explained everything
Here "everything" refers to all his parables. Alternate
translation: "he explained all his parables"

Mark 4:35

Connecting Statement:
As Jesus and his disciples take a boat to escape the
crowds of people, a great storm arises. His disciples are
afraid when they see that even the wind and the sea
obey Jesus.

he said to them
"Jesus said to his disciples"

the other side
"the other side of the Sea of Galilee" or "the other side
of the sea"

Mark 4:36

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 4:37

a violent windstorm arose
Here "arose" is an idiom for "began." Alternate
translation: "a violent windstorm began"

the boat was almost full of water
It may be helpful to state that the boat was filling up
with water. Alternate translation: "the boat was in
danger of being filled with water"

Mark 4:38

the stern
The stern is the back part of the boat.

They woke him up
The word "they" refers to the disciples.

do you not care that we are about to die?
The disciples asked this question to show that they
were in great danger and that they were upset that
Jesus was not helping them. This question can be
written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you need
to pay attention to what is happening; we are all about
to die!"

we are about to die
The word "we" includes the disciples and Jesus.

Mark 4:39

Peace! Be still!
These two phrases are similar and used to emphasize
what Jesus wanted the wind and the sea to do.

a great calm
"a great stillness over the sea" or "a great calm over the
sea"

Mark 4:40

Then he said to them
"And Jesus said to his disciples"

Why are you afraid? Do you still not have faith?
Jesus asks these questions to make his disciples
consider why they are afraid when he is with them.
These questions can be written as statements. Alternate
translation: "You should not be afraid. You need to have
more faith."

Mark 4:41

Who then is this, because even the wind and the sea obey him?
The disciples ask this question in amazement at what
Jesus did. This question can be written as a statement.
Alternate translation: "This man is not like ordinary
men; even the wind and the sea obey him!"

Chapter 5

Mark 5 General Notes

Possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Talitha, koum"

The words "Talitha, koum"

Mark 5:1

Connecting Statement:

After Jesus calms the great storm, he heals a man who has many demons, but the local people in Gerasa are not glad about his healing, and they beg Jesus to leave.

They came

The word "They" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

the sea

This refers to the Sea of Galilee.

Gerasenes

This name refers to the people who live in Gerasa.

Mark 5:2

with an unclean spirit

This is an idiom meaning that the man is "controlled" or "possessed" by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "controlled by an unclean spirit" or "that an unclean spirit possessed"

Mark 5:3

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 5:4

He had been bound many times

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "People had bound him many times"

his shackles were shattered

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "he shattered his shackles"

shackles

pieces of metal that people wrap around the arms and legs of prisoners and attach with chains to objects that do not move so the prisoners cannot move

No one had the strength to subdue him

The man was so strong that no one could subdue him.

Alternate translation: "He was so strong that no one was strong enough to subdue him"

subdue him

"control him"

Mark 5:5

cut himself with sharp stones

Often when a person is possessed by a demon, the demon will cause the person to do self-destructive things, such as cutting himself.

Mark 5:6

When he saw Jesus from a distance

When the man first saw Jesus, Jesus would have been getting out of the boat.

bowed down

This means that he knelt down before Jesus out of reverence and respect, not out of worship.

Mark 5:7

General Information:

The information in verses 7 and 8 may be reordered to present the events in the order that they happened, as in the UDB.

He cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

What do I have to do with you, Jesus, Son of the Most High God?
The unclean spirit asks this question out of fear. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Leave me alone, Jesus, Son of the Most High God! There is no reason for you to interfere with me."

Jesus ... do not torment me
Jesus has the power to torment unclean spirits.

Son of the Most High God
This is an important title for Jesus.

I beg you by God himself
Here the unclean spirit is swearing by God as he makes a request of Jesus. Consider how this type of request is made in your language. Alternate translation: "I beg you before God" or "I swear by God himself and beg you"

Mark 5:8

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 5:9

He asked him
"And Jesus asked the unclean spirit"

He answered him, "My name is Legion, for we are many."
One spirit was speaking for many here. He spoke of them as if they were a legion, a Roman army unit of about 6,000 soldiers. Alternate translation: "And the spirit said to him, 'Call us an army, for many of us are inside the man.'"

Mark 5:10

He begged him
"The unclean spirit begged Jesus"

not to send them
"not to send him and the other unclean spirits"

Mark 5:11

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 5:12

they begged him
"the unclean spirits begged Jesus"

Mark 5:13

he allowed them
It may be helpful to state clearly what Jesus allowed them to do. Alternate translation: "Jesus allowed the unclean spirits to do what they asked permission to do"

into the sea, and about two thousand pigs drowned in the sea
You can make the words after the comma a separate sentence: "into the sea. There were about two thousand pigs, and they drowned in the sea"

about two thousand pigs
"about 2,000 pigs"

Mark 5:14

reported what had happened in the city and in the countryside
"told people in the city and in the countryside what had happened"

Mark 5:15

Legion
This was the name of the many demons that had been in the man. See how you translated this in Mark 5:9.

in his right mind
This is an idiom meaning that he is thinking clearly. Alternate translation: "of a normal mind" or "thinking clearly"

they were afraid
The word "they" refers to the group of people who went out to see what had happened.

Mark 5:16

Those who had seen what happened
"The people who had witnessed what had happened"

Mark 5:17

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 5:18

the demon-possessed man
Though the man is no longer demon-possessed, he is still described in this way. Alternate translation: "the man who had been demon-possessed"

Mark 5:19

But Jesus did not permit him
What Jesus did not allow the man to do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But he did not allow the man to come with them"

Mark 5:20

Decapolis
This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee.

everyone was amazed
It may be helpful to state why the people were amazed. Alternate translation: "all the people who heard what the man said were amazed"

Mark 5:21

Connecting Statement:
After healing the demon-possessed man in region of the Gerasenes, Jesus and his disciples return across the lake to Capernaum where one of the leaders of the synagogue asks Jesus to heal his daughter.

the other side
This refers to the other side of the sea

beside the sea
"on the seashore" or "on the shore"

the sea
This is the Sea of Galilee.

Mark 5:22

Jairus
This is the name of a man.

Mark 5:23

lay your hands
"Laying on hands" refers to a prophet or teacher placing his hand on someone and imparting either healing or a blessing. In this case, Jarius is asking Jesus to heal his daughter.

that she may be made well and live
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "and heal her and make her live"

Mark 5:24

So he went with him
"So Jesus went with Jairus." Jesus's disciples also went with him. Alternate translation: "So Jesus and the disciples went with Jairus"

pressed close around him
This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus.

Mark 5:25

Connecting Statement:
While Jesus is on his way to heal the man's little 12-year-old girl, a woman who has been sick for 12 years interrupts by touching Jesus for her healing.

Now a woman was there
The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here the author starts to tell a new part of the story with a new person. Consider how new people are introduced into a story in your language.

who had a flow of blood for twelve years
The woman did not have an open wound; rather, her monthly flow of blood would not stop. Your language may have a polite way to refer to this condition.

for twelve years
"for 12 years"

Mark 5:26

she grew worse
"her sickness got worse" or "her bleeding increased"

Mark 5:27

the reports about Jesus
She had heard reports about Jesus of how he healed people. Alternate translation: "that Jesus healed people"

cloak
outer garment or coat

Mark 5:28

I will be healed
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will heal me" or "his power will heal me"

Mark 5:29

she was healed from her affliction

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the sickness left her" or "she was no longer sick"

Mark 5:30

that power had gone out from him

When the woman touched Jesus, Jesus felt his power healing her. Jesus himself did not lose any of his power to heal people when he healed her. Alternate translation: "that his healing power had healed someone"

Mark 5:31

this crowd pressed around you

This means they crowded around Jesus and pressed themselves together to be closer to Jesus. See how you translated this in Mark 5:24.

Mark 5:32

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 5:33

fell down before him

"knelt down before him." She knelt down before Jesus as an act of honor and submission.

told him the whole truth

The phrase "the whole truth" refers to how she had touched him and had become well. Alternate translation: "told him the whole truth about how she had touched him"

Mark 5:34

Daughter

Jesus called the woman "Daughter." This was a kind way for a teacher to speak to a woman. Jesus showed that he cared about her.

your faith

"your faith in me"

Mark 5:35

While he was speaking

"While Jesus was speaking"

the synagogue leader

This refers to Jairus ([Mark 5:22](#)).

Why trouble the teacher any longer?

This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is useless to bother the teacher any longer" or "There is no need to bother the teacher any longer."

the teacher

This refers to Jesus.

Mark 5:36

the message that was spoken

This can be stated as in active form. Alternate translation: "the message that they told Jairus"

Just believe

If necessary, you can state what Jesus is commanding Jairus to believe. Alternate translation: "Just believe I can make your daughter live"

Mark 5:37

General Information:

In verses 37 and 38, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

He did not permit anyone to accompany him except Peter ... James
This double negative emphasizes that Peter and the others were the only ones whom he permitted to accompany him. Alternate translation: "He only permitted Peter ... James to accompany him"

He did not permit

Jesus did not permit

to accompany him

"to come with him." It may be helpful to state where they were going. Alternate translation: "to accompany him to Jairus' house"

Mark 5:38

General Information:

In verses 37 and 38, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating. If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

he saw

Jesus saw

Mark 5:39

he said to them

"Jesus said to the people who were weeping"

Why are you upset and why do you weep?

Jesus asked this question to help them see their lack of faith. This may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is not a time to be upset and crying."

The child is not dead but sleeps

Jesus uses the common word for sleep, and so should the translation.

Mark 5:40

They began to mock him

Jesus used the common word for sleep (verse 39). The reader should understand that the people who hear Jesus speak are laughing at him because they truly do know the difference between a dead person and a sleeping person and they think he does not.

put them all outside

"sent all the other people outside the house"

those who were with him

This refers to Peter, James, and John.

went in where the child was

It may be helpful to state where the child is. Alternate translation: "went into the room where the child was lying"

Mark 5:41

Talitha, kum

This is an Aramaic sentence that Jesus spoke to the little girl in her language. Write these words as they sound, using your alphabet.

Mark 5:42

she was twelve years of age

"she was 12 years old"

Mark 5:43

He strictly ordered them that no one should know about this. Then

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "He ordered them strictly, 'No one should know about this!' Then" or "He ordered them strictly, 'Do not tell anyone about what I have done!' Then"

He strictly ordered them

"He strongly commanded them"

Then he told them to give her something to eat.

This can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "And he told them, 'Give her something to eat.'"

Chapter 6

Mark 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

"Anointed with oil"

In the ancient Near East, people would try to heal sick people by putting olive oil on them.

Mark 6:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus returns to his hometown, where he is not accepted.

his hometown

This refers to the town of Nazareth, where Jesus grew up and where his family lived. This does not mean that he owned land there.

Mark 6:2

What is this wisdom that has been given to him?

This question can be asked in active form. Alternate translation: "What is this wisdom that he has gained?"

that he does with his hands

This phrase emphasizes that Jesus himself does the miracles. Alternate translation: "that he himself works"

Mark 6:3

Is this not the carpenter, the son of Mary and the brother of James and Joses and Judas and Simon? Are his sisters not here with us?

These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "He is just an ordinary carpenter! We know him and his family. We know Mary his mother. We know his younger brothers James, Joses, Judas and Simon. And his younger sisters also live here with us."

Mark 6:4

to them

"to the crowd"

A prophet is not without honor, except

This sentence uses a double negative to emphasize the positive. Alternate translation: "A prophet is always honored, except" or "People always honor prophets, except those"

Mark 6:5

to lay his hands on a few sick people

Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, Jesus was healing people.

Mark 6:6

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus sends his disciples out in sets of two to preach and to heal.

he called the twelve

Here the word "called" means that he summoned the twelve to come to him.

two by two

"2 by 2" or "in pairs"

Mark 6:8

General Information:

Jesus's instructions in verses 8 and 9 can be reordered to separate what he told the disciples to do from what he told them not to do, as in the UDB.

to take nothing for their journey, except a staff

This double negative emphasizes that a staff is the only thing that they were to take. Alternate translation: "to take only a staff for their journey"

no bread

Here "bread" is a synecdoche for food in general.

Alternate translation: "no food"

Mark 6:9

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:10

He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve"

remain until you go away from there

Here "remain" represents daily going back to that house to eat and sleep there. Alternate translation: "eat and sleep in that house until you leave that area"

Mark 6:11

as a testimony to them

"as a testimony against them." The testimony can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "as a testimony that they did not welcome you" or "to show them that they did wrong when they did not welcome you"

Mark 6:12

They went out

The word "They" refers to the twelve and does not include Jesus. Also, it may be helpful to state that they went out to various towns. Alternate translation: "They went out to various towns"

repent

"stop sinning"

Mark 6:13

They cast out many demons

It may be helpful to state that they cast the demons out of people. Alternate translation: "They cast many demons out of people"

Mark 6:14

Connecting Statement:

Before this time, Herod commanded that John the Baptist be killed. When Herod hears about Jesus's miracles, he worries, thinking that someone has raised John the Baptist from the dead.

King Herod heard this

The word "this" refers to everything that Jesus and his disciples had been doing in various towns, including casting out demons and healing people.

Some were saying, "John the Baptist has been raised

Some people thought that Jesus was John the Baptist.

This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation:

"Some people were saying, 'He is John the Baptist, who has been raised'"

John the Baptist has been raised from the dead

"Raised from the dead" is an idiom that means "caused to live again." This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "God has raised John the Baptist from the dead" or "John the Baptist has become alive again"

Mark 6:15

Some others said, "He is Elijah."

It may be helpful to state why some people thought he was Elijah. Alternate translation: "Some others said, 'He is Elijah, whom God promised to send back again.'"

Mark 6:16

whom I beheaded

Herod said "I beheaded" because he had commanded his soldier to behead John. Alternate translation: "whom I commanded my soldier to behead"

has been raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "has risen" or "has become alive again"

Mark 6:17

General Information:

Here the author begins to give background information about Herod and why he beheaded John the Baptist.

Herod sent to have John arrested and he had him bound in prison

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"Herod sent his soldiers to arrest John and to bind him in prison"

on account of Herodias

"because of Herodias"

his brother Philip's wife

"the wife of his brother Philip." Herod's brother Philip is not the same Philip who was an evangelist in the book of Acts or the Philip who was one of Jesus's twelve disciples.

because he had married her

"because Herod had married her"

Mark 6:18

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:19

Herodias held on to anger against him

"Herodias continued to be angry at John"

and wanted to kill him

Herodias wanted someone to kill John. Alternate translation: "and she wanted someone to kill him"

but she could not

What she could not do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "but she could not kill him" or "but she could not have him killed"

Mark 6:20

for Herod feared John; he knew

These two clauses can be linked differently to show more clearly why Herod feared John. Alternate translation: "for Herod feared John because he knew"

he knew that he was a righteous

"Herod knew that John was a righteous"

Listening to him

"Listening to John"

Mark 6:21

Connecting Statement:

The author continues to give background information about Herod and the beheading of John the Baptist.

an opportunity came

"a convenient day" or "there was an opportune time."

This was a time when Herodias could finally do something so that John the Baptist would be killed.

he made a dinner for his officials ... of Galilee

This means that he invited those people to a special dinner to celebrate his birthday with him. Alternate translation: "he had a banquet for his officials ... of Galilee" or "he invited his officials ... of Galilee to eat and celebrate with him"

a dinner

a formal meal or banquet

Mark 6:22

Herodias herself

The word "herself" is a reflexive pronoun used to emphasize that it was significant that it was Herodias's own daughter who danced at the dinner.

came in

"came into the room"

Mark 6:23

Whatever you ask ... my kingdom

"I will give you whatever you ask me to give to you, even half of what I own and rule, if you ask for that"

Mark 6:24

went out

"went out of the room"

Mark 6:25

on a wooden platter

"on a board" or "on a large wooden dish"

Mark 6:26

because of the oath he had made

The oath was what Herod swore to the girl in verse 23. Alternate translation: "because of what he had sworn to the girl" or "because he had sworn to give the girl whatever she asked for"

and because of his dinner guests

This can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "and because his dinner guests had heard his oath"

Mark 6:27

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:28

on a platter

"on a tray"

Mark 6:29

When his disciples

"When John's disciples"

Mark 6:30

Connecting Statement:

After the disciples return from preaching and healing, they go somewhere to be alone, but there are many people who come to hear Jesus teach. When it becomes late, he feeds the people and then sends everyone away while he prays alone.

Mark 6:31

a deserted place

a place where there are no people

many were coming and going

This means that people were continually coming to the apostles and then going away from them.

they did not even

The word "they" refers to the apostles.

Mark 6:32

So they went away

Here the word "they" includes both the apostles and Jesus.

Mark 6:33

they saw them leaving and many recognized them, and they ran there together on foot from all the towns, and they arrived there before them

The people saw Jesus and the apostles leaving, and many of the people recognized Jesus and the apostles, and the people ran there together on foot from all the towns, and the people arrived there before Jesus and the apostles did.

on foot

The people are going on foot by land, which contrasts with how the disciples went by boat.

Mark 6:34

When they came ... on them because they were like ... to teach them

When Jesus and the disciples came ... on the people in the crowd because the people in the crowd were like ... to teach the people in the crowd

they were like sheep without a shepherd

Jesus compares the people to sheep who are confused when they do not have their shepherd to lead them.

Mark 6:35

When the hour was late

This means it was late in the day. Alternate translation: "When it was getting late" or "Late in the afternoon"

a deserted place

This refers to a place where there are no people. See how you translated this in Mark 6:31.

Mark 6:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:37

But he answered and said to them

"But Jesus answered and said to his disciples"

Can we go and buy two hundred denarii worth of bread and give it to them to eat?

The disciples ask this question to say that there is no way they could afford to buy enough food for this crowd. Alternate translation: "We could not buy enough bread to feed this crowd, even if we had two hundred denarii!"

two hundred denarii

"200 denarii." The singular form of the word "denarii" is "denarius." A denarius was a Roman silver coin worth one day's wages.

Mark 6:38

loaves

lumps of bread dough that have been shaped and baked

Mark 6:39

green grass

Describe the grass with the color word used in your language for healthy grass, which may or may not be the color green.

Mark 6:40

in groups of hundreds and fifties

This refers to the number of people in each of the groups. Alternate translation: "with about fifty people in some groups and about a hundred people in other groups"

Mark 6:41

looking up to heaven

This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

he blessed

"he spoke a blessing" or "he gave thanks"

He also divided the two fish among them all

"he divided the two fish so that everyone could have some"

Mark 6:42

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:43

They took up

Possible meaning are 1) "The disciples took up" or 2) "The people took up."

broken pieces of bread, twelve baskets full

"twelve baskets full of broken pieces of bread"

twelve baskets

"12 baskets"

Mark 6:44

There were five thousand men who ate the loaves

Telling the number of men in the crowd hints at how large the crowd was. The women and children also ate.

Alternate translation: "So many people ate the loaves of bread; the number of just the men was five thousand"

five thousand men

"5,000 men"

Mark 6:45

to the other side

This refers to the Sea of Galilee. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the Sea of Galilee"

Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

Mark 6:46

After taking leave of them

"After saying goodbye to them" or "After they had left." Use the common words your language uses for a time when friends leave each other and expect to see each other after a few hours or days.

Mark 6:47

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:48

Connecting Statement:

A storm arises while the disciples are trying to cross the lake. Seeing Jesus walking on the water terrifies them. They do not understand how Jesus can calm the storm.

fourth watch

This is the time between 3 a.m. and sunrise.

Mark 6:49

a ghost

the spirit of a dead person or some other kind of spirit

Mark 6:50

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:51

They were completely amazed

If you need to be more specific, it can be stated what they were amazed by. Alternate translation: "They were completely amazed at what he had done"

Mark 6:52

what the loaves meant

Here the phrase "the loaves" refers to when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread. Alternate translation: "what it meant when Jesus multiplied the loaves of bread" or "what it meant when Jesus caused the few loaves to become many"

their hearts were hardened

Having a hard heart represents being too stubborn to understand. Alternate translation: "they were too stubborn to understand"

Mark 6:53

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples arrive at Gennesaret in their boat, people see him and bring people for him to heal. This happens wherever they go.

Gennesaret

This is the name of the region to the northwest of the Sea of Galilee.

Mark 6:54

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 6:55

they ran throughout the whole region

It may be helpful to state why they ran through the region. Alternate translation: "they ran throughout the whole district in order to tell others that Jesus was there"

they ran ... they heard

The word "they" refers to the people who recognized Jesus, not to the disciples.

the sick

This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

Mark 6:56

Wherever he entered

"Wherever Jesus entered"

they would put

Here "they" refers to the people. It does not refer to Jesus's disciples.

the sick

This phrase refers to people. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

They begged him

Possible meanings are 1) "The sick begged him" or 2) "The people begged him."

let them touch

The word "them" refers to the sick.

the edge of his garment

"the hem of his robe" or "the edge of his clothes"

as many as

"all those who"

Chapter 7

Mark 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 7:6-7, which is from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Hand washing

The Pharisees washed many things that were not dirty because they were trying to make God think that they were good. They washed their hands before they ate, even when their hands were not dirty, though the law of Moses did not say that they had to do it. Jesus told them that they were wrong and that people make God happy by thinking and doing the right things. (See: lawofmoses and clean)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Ephphatha"

This is an Aramaic word. Mark wrote it the way it sounds using Greek letters and then explained what it means.

Mark 7:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus rebukes the Pharisees and scribes.

gathered around him

"gathered around Jesus"

Mark 7:2

They saw

"The Pharisees and the scribes saw"

that is, unwashed

The word "unwashed" explains why the disciples' hands were defiled. It can be expressed in active form. Alternate translation: "that is, with hands that they had not washed" or "that is, they had not washed their hands"

Mark 7:3

General Information:

In verses 3 and 4, the author gives background information about the Pharisees' washing traditions in order to show why the Pharisees were bothered that Jesus's disciples did not wash their hands before eating.

If you need to reorder the events in these verses, it may be helpful to use a verse bridge, as in the UDB.

For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they wash their hands carefully

The words "do not" and "unless" are a double negative. This can be stated in a positive way. Alternate translation: "For the Pharisees and all the Jews eat only after they wash their hands carefully"

unless they wash their hands carefully

This kind of hand washing was an important ceremonial or religious act, not just an act of making ones hands clean physically. The Jews washed their hands carefully to obey all religious traditions and rules about cleanness. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "unless they make their hands ceremonially clean"

elders

Jewish elders were leaders in their communities and were also judges for the people.

Mark 7:4

they hold to many other things they have received

The words "things they have received" refers to traditions that they learned from their elders. Alternate

translation: "they follow many other traditions" or "they do many other things that they were taught to do"

copper vessels
"copper kettles" or "metal containers"

the couches upon which they eat
"benches" or "beds." At that time, the Jews would recline when eating.

Mark 7:5

Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat their bread with unclean hands?
Here "walk according to" is a metaphor for "obey." The Pharisees and scribes asked this question to challenge Jesus's authority. This can be written as a statement.
Alternate translation: "Your disciples should not disobey the traditions of our elders by eating their bread with unclean hands."

unclean
The hands were ritually unclean because the disciples had not performed the ceremonial washing. The Pharisees were not accusing them of eating with physical dirt on their hands.

bread
This is a synecdoche, representing food in general.
Alternate translation: "food"

Mark 7:6

General Information:
Here Jesus quotes the prophet Isaiah, who had written scripture many years earlier.

with their lips
Here "lips" is a metonym for speaking. Alternate translation: "by what they say"

but their heart is far from me
Here "heart" refers to a person's thoughts or emotions. This is a way of saying the people are not truly devoted to God. Alternate translation: "but they do not really love me"

Mark 7:7

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 7:8

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to rebuke the scribes and Pharisees.

You abandon the commandment of God
"You refuse to obey the commandment of God"

hold on to
This phrase is a metaphor for strictly obeying.
Alternate translation: "strictly obey"

Mark 7:9

How well you reject the commandment ... keep your tradition
Jesus uses this ironic statement to rebuke his listeners for forsaking God's commandment. Alternate translation: "You think you have done well in how you have rejected the commandment of God so you may keep your own traditions, but what you have done is not good at all"

How well you reject
"How skillfully you reject"

Mark 7:10

He who speaks evil of his father or mother will surely be put to death
This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The authorities must execute a person who speaks evil about his father or mother"

who speaks evil of
"who curses"

Mark 7:11

General Information:
In verses 11 and 12, Jesus shows how the Pharisees teach people that they do not have to obey God's commandment to honor their parents. In verse 11 Jesus tells what the Pharisees allow people to say about their possessions, and in verse 12 he tells how that affects what people do for their parents.

is Corban
"Corban" is a Hebrew word that refers to things that people promise to give to God. Translators normally transliterate it using the target language alphabet. Some translators translate its meaning, and then leave out Mark's explanation of the meaning that follows. Alternate translation: "is a gift to God" or "belongs to God"

Whatever help you would have received from me is Corban
A person might say this so that he would not have to give anything to help his parents. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I will not help you, because whatever help you would have received from me is Corban"

a Gift

This phrase explains the meaning of the Hebrew word "Corban." Mark explained the meaning so that his non-Jewish readers could understand what Jesus said. This seems to have been the proper name of a sacrifice. You may need to make explicit who the gift was given to. Alternate translation: "a Gift to God"

Mark 7:12

then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother

Possible meanings are that by telling people that they could say that their possessions are Corban, 1) the Pharisees did not allow people to help their parents, or 2) the Pharisees allowed people to refuse to help their parents. Alternate translation: "then you permit him to do nothing for his father or his mother"

then you no longer permit him to do anything for his father or his mother

Here "do anything" refers to helping his parents by giving to them. This can be translated as "then you no longer permit him to give anything to his father or his mother" or "then you permit him to give nothing to his father or his mother"

Mark 7:13

the word of God

Jesus is speaking specifically of the command to love father and mother. Alternate translation: "God's command"

void

canceled or done away with

many similar things you do

"you are doing many other things similar to this"

Mark 7:14

Connecting Statement:

Jesus tells a parable to the crowd to help them understand what he has been saying to the scribes and Pharisees.

He called

"Jesus called"

Listen to me, all of you, and understand

The words "Listen" and "understand" are related. Jesus uses them together to emphasize that his hearers should pay close attention to what he is saying.

understand

It may be helpful to state what Jesus is telling them to understand. Alternate translation: "try to understand what I am about to tell you"

Mark 7:15

nothing from outside of a person

Jesus is speaking about what a person eats. This is in contrast to "what comes out of the person." Alternate translation: "nothing from outside a person that he can eat"

It is what comes out of the person

This refers to the things a person does or says. This is in contrast to what is "outside a person that ... enters into him." Alternate translation: "It is what comes out of a person that he says or does"

Mark 7:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 7:17

Connecting Statement:

The disciples still do not understand what Jesus has just said to the scribes, Pharisees, and crowds. Jesus explains his meaning more thoroughly to them.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new part of the story. Jesus is now away from the crowd, in a house with his disciples.

Mark 7:18

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to teach his disciples by asking a question.

Are you also still without understanding?

Jesus uses this question to express his disappointment that they do not understand. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "After all I have said and done, I would expect you to understand."

Mark 7:19

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes asking the question he is using to teach his disciples.

because ... latrine?

This is the end of the question that begins with the words "Do you not see" in verse 18. Jesus uses this

question to teach his disciples something they should already know. It can be expressed as a statement. "You should already understand that whatever enters into a person from outside cannot defile him, because it cannot go into his heart, but it goes into his stomach and then passes out into the latrine."

it cannot go into his heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. Here Jesus means that food does not affect a person's character. Alternate translation: "it cannot go into his inner being" or "it cannot go into his mind"

because it

Here "it" refers to what goes into a person; that is, what a person eats.

all foods clean

It may be helpful to explain clearly what this phrase means. Alternate translation: "all foods clean, meaning that people can eat any food without God considering the eater defiled"

Mark 7:20

He said

"Jesus said"

It is that which comes out of the person that defiles him
"What defiles a person is what comes out of him"

Mark 7:21

out of the heart, proceed evil thoughts

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. Alternate translation: "out of the inner being, come evil thoughts" or "out of the mind, come evil thoughts"

Mark 7:22

sensuality

not controlling one's lustful desires

slander

or blasphemy

Mark 7:23

come from within

Here the word "within" describes a person's heart. Alternate translation: "come from within a person's heart" or "come from within a person's thoughts"

Mark 7:24

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus goes away to Tyre, he heals the daughter of a Gentile woman who has extraordinary faith.

Mark 7:25

had an unclean spirit

This is an idiom meaning that she was possessed by the unclean spirit. Alternate translation: "was possessed by an unclean spirit"

fell down

"knelt." This is an act of honor and submission.

Mark 7:26

Now the woman was a Greek, a Syrophoenician by descent

The word "Now" is used here to mark a pause in the story, as the author gives us background information about the woman.

Syrophoenician

This is the name of the woman's nationality. She was born in the Phoenician region in Syria.

Mark 7:27

Let the children first be fed. For it is not proper ... throw it to the dogs

Here Jesus speaks about the Jews as if they are children and the Gentiles as if they are dogs. Alternate translation: "Let the children of Israel first be fed. For it is not right to take the children's bread and throw it to the Gentiles, who are like dogs"

Let the children first be fed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We must first feed the children of Israel"

proper

morally right

bread

This refers to food in general. Alternate translation: "food"

dogs

This refers to small dogs kept as pets.

Mark 7:28

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 7:29

you are free to go
Jesus was implying that she no longer needed to stay to ask him to help her daughter. He would do it. Alternate translation: "you may go now" or "you may go home in peace"

The demon has gone out of your daughter
Jesus has caused the unclean spirit to leave the woman's daughter. This can be expressed clearly.
Alternate translation: "I have caused the evil spirit to leave your daughter"

Mark 7:30

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 7:31

Connecting Statement:
After healing people in Tyre, Jesus goes to the Sea of Galilee. There he heals a deaf man, which amazes the people.

went out again from the region of Tyre
"left the region of Tyre"

up into the region
Possible meanings are 1) "in the region" as Jesus is at the sea in the region of the Decapolis or 2) "through the region" as Jesus went through the region of the Decapolis to get to the sea.

Decapolis
This is the name of a region that means Ten Cities. It is located to the southeast of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated this in [Mark 5:20]

Mark 7:32

They brought
"And people brought"

who was deaf
"who was not able to hear"

they begged him to lay his hand on him
Prophets and teachers would put their hands on people in order to heal them or bless them. In this case, people are begging Jesus to heal a man. Alternate translation: "they begged Jesus to put his hand on the man to heal him"

Mark 7:33

Then taking him ... privately, he
"Then Jesus took the man ... privately, and he"

he put his fingers into his ears
Jesus is putting his own fingers in the man's ears.

then he spit and touched his tongue
It may be helpful to state that Jesus spit on his fingers.
Alternate translation: "then he spit on his fingers and touched the man's tongue with them"

Mark 7:34

looked up to heaven
This means that he looked up toward the sky, which is associated with the place where God lives.

sighed
This means that Jesus groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard.

said to him
"said to the man"

Ephphatha
This is an Aramaic word. It should be copied into your language using your alphabet.

Mark 7:35

his ears were opened
This means he was able to hear. Alternate translation: "his ears were opened and he was able to hear" or "he was able to hear"

the bond of his tongue was released
This metaphor speaks of the man's tongue as if it were bound by a rope or chain that kept the man from speaking and that Jesus broke or loosened so the man could speak. This can be stated in active form.
Alternate translation: "Jesus released the bond of his tongue" or "Jesus set his tongue free" or "Jesus enabled the man to speak"

Mark 7:36

But the more he ordered them, the more abundantly they proclaimed it
The refers to him ordering them not to tell anyone about what he had done. Alternate translation: "But though he continually ordered them not to tell anyone, they continually proclaimed it"

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

the more abundantly
"the more widely" or "the more"

Mark 7:37

were extremely astonished
"were utterly amazed" or "were exceedingly
astonished" or "were astonished beyond all measure"

the deaf hear and the mute speak
These refer to people. Alternate translation: "the deaf
people hear and the mute people speak" or "people
who cannot hear, hear, and people who cannot speak,
speak"

Chapter 8

Mark 8 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Bread

When Jesus worked a miracle and provided bread for a large crowd of people, they probably thought about when God miraculously provided food for the people of Israel when they were in the wilderness.

Yeast is the ingredient that causes bread to become larger before it is baked. In this chapter, Jesus uses yeast as a metaphor for things that change the way people think, speak, and act.

"Adulterous generation"

When Jesus called the people an "adulterous generation," he was telling them that they were not faithful to God. (See: faithful and peopleofgod)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

Jesus used many rhetorical questions as a way of both teaching the disciples

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus uses a paradox when he says, "Whoever wants to save his life will lose it, and whoever loses his life for my sake will find it" ([Mark 8:35-37](#)).

Mark 8:1

Connecting Statement:

A great, hungry crowd is with Jesus. He feeds them using only seven loaves and a few fish before Jesus and his disciples get in a boat to go to another place.

In those days

This phrase is used to introduce a new event in the story.

Mark 8:2

they continue to be with me already for three days and have nothing to eat
"this is this third day these people have been with me, and they have nothing to eat"

Mark 8:3

they may faint

Possible meanings are 1) literal, "they may lose consciousness temporarily" or 2) hyperbolic exaggeration, "they may become weak."

Mark 8:4

Where can we get enough loaves of bread in such a deserted place to satisfy these people?

The disciples are expressing surprise that Jesus would expect them to be able to find enough food. Alternate translation: "This place is so deserted that there is no place here for us to get enough loaves of bread to satisfy these people!"

loaves of bread

Loaves of bread are lumps of dough that have been shaped and baked.

Mark 8:5

He asked them
"Jesus asked his disciples"

Mark 8:6

He commanded the crowd to sit down on the ground.
This can be written as a direct quote. "Jesus commanded the crowd, 'Sit down on the ground.'"

sit down
Use your language's word for how people customarily eat when there is no table, whether sitting or lying down.

Mark 8:7

They also had
Here the word "they" is used to refer to Jesus and his disciples.

he gave thanks for them
"Jesus gave thanks for the fish"

Mark 8:8

They ate
"The people ate"

they picked up
"the disciples picked up"

the remaining broken pieces, seven large baskets
This refers to the broken pieces of fish and bread that were left over after the people ate. Alternate translation: "the remaining broken pieces of bread and fish, which filled seven large baskets"

Mark 8:9

Then he sent them away
It may be helpful to clarify when he sent them away. Alternate translation: "After they ate, Jesus sent them away"

Mark 8:10

they went into the region of Dalmanutha
It may be helpful to clarify how they got to Dalmanutha. Alternate translation: "they sailed around the Sea of Galilee to the region of Dalmanutha"

Dalmanutha
This is the name of a place on the northwestern shore of the Sea of Galilee.

Mark 8:11

Connecting Statement:
In Dalmanutha, Jesus refuses to give the Pharisees a sign before he and his disciples get in a boat and leave.

They sought from him
"They asked him for"

a sign from heaven
They wanted a sign that would prove that Jesus's power and authority were from God. Possible meanings are 1) The word "heaven" is a metonym for God. Alternate translation: "a sign from God" or 2) the word "heaven" refers to the sky. Alternate translation: "a sign from the sky"

to test him
The Pharisees tried to test Jesus to make him prove that he was from God. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "to prove that God had sent him"

Mark 8:12

He sighed deeply in his spirit
This means that he groaned or that he let out a long deep breath that could be heard. It probably shows Jesus's deep sadness that the Pharisees refused to believe him. See how you translated this in Mark 7:34.

in his spirit
"in himself"

Why does this generation seek for a sign?
Jesus is scolding them. This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This generation should not seek a sign."

this generation
When Jesus speaks of "this generation," he is referring to the people who lived at that time. The Pharisees are included in this group. Alternate translation: "you and the people of this generation"

no sign will be given
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will not give a sign"

Mark 8:13

he left them, got into a boat again
Jesus's disciples went with him. Some information can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "he left them, got into a boat again with his disciples"

to the other side

This describes the Sea of Galilee, which can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to the other side of the sea"

Mark 8:14

Connecting Statement:

While Jesus and his disciples are in a boat, they have a discussion about the lack of understanding among the Pharisees and Herod, though they had seen many signs.

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the story. Here the author tells background information about the disciples forgetting to bring bread.

no more than one loaf

The negative phrase "no more" is used to emphasize how small an amount of bread they had. Alternate translation: "only one loaf"

Mark 8:15

Keep watch and be on guard

These two terms have a common meaning and are repeated here for emphasis. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "Keep watch"

the yeast of the Pharisees and the yeast of Herod

Here Jesus is speaking to his disciples in a metaphor they do not understand. Jesus is comparing the Pharisees' and Herod's teachings to yeast, but you should not explain this when you translate it because the disciples themselves did not understand it.

Mark 8:16

no bread

The word "no" is an exaggeration. The disciples did have one loaf of bread

Mark 8:17

Why are you arguing about having no bread?

Here Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples because they should have understood what he had been talking about. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be thinking that I am talking about actual bread."

Do you still not see or understand?

These questions have the same meaning and are used together to emphasize that they do not understand. This can be written as one question or as a statement.

Alternate translation: "Do you not yet understand?" or "You should perceive and understand by now the things I say and do."

Do you have hardened hearts?

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's mind and "hardened" is a metaphor for not being able or willing to understand something. Jesus uses a question to scold the disciples. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are so slow to understand what I mean!" or "You are unwilling to understand what I mean!"

Mark 8:18

You have eyes; do you not see? You have ears; do you not hear? Do you not remember?

Jesus continues to mildly rebuke his disciples. These questions can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "You have eyes, but you do not understand what you see. You have ears, but you do not understand what you hear. You should remember."

Mark 8:19

the five thousand

This refers to the 5,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: "the 5,000 people"

how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you take up
It may be helpful to state when they collected the baskets of pieces. Alternate translation: "how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

Mark 8:20

the four thousand

This refers to the 4,000 people Jesus fed. Alternate translation: "the 4,000 people"

how many basketfuls of broken pieces of bread did you take up
It may be helpful to state when they collected these. Alternate translation: "how many baskets full of broken pieces of bread did you collect after everyone finished eating"

Mark 8:21

Do you not yet understand?

Jesus is mildly rebuking his disciples for not understanding. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should understand by now the things I say and do."

Mark 8:22

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples get out of their boat at Bethsaida, Jesus heals a blind man.

Bethsaida

This is a town on the northern shore of the Sea of Galilee. See how you translated the name of this town in [Mark 6:45]

to touch him

It may be helpful to state why they wanted Jesus to touch the man. Alternate translation: "to touch him in order to heal him"

Mark 8:23

When he had spit on his eyes ... he asked him

"When Jesus had spit on the man's eyes ... Jesus asked the man"

Mark 8:24

He looked up

"The man looked up"

I see men who look like walking trees

The man sees men walking around, yet they are not clear to him, so he compares them to trees. Alternate translation: "Yes, I see people! They are walking around, but I cannot see them clearly. They look like trees"

Mark 8:25

Then he again

"Then Jesus again"

and the man opened his eyes, his sight was restored

The phrase "his sight was restored" can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "restoring the man's sight, and then the man opened his eyes"

Mark 8:26

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 8:27

Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples talk on their way to the villages of Caesarea Philippi about who Jesus is and what will happen to him.

Mark 8:28

They answered him and said

"They answered him, saying,"

John the Baptist

The disciples answer that this was who some people said Jesus was. This can be shown more clearly.

Alternate translation: "Some people say that you are John the Baptist"

Others say ... others

The word "others" refers to other people. This refers to their responses to Jesus's question. Alternate translation: "Other people say you are ... other people say you are"

Mark 8:29

He asked them

"Jesus asked his disciples"

Mark 8:30

Jesus warned them not to tell anyone about him.

Jesus did not want them to tell anyone that he was the Christ. This can be made more explicit. This can also be written as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus warned them not to tell anyone that he is the Christ." or "Jesus warned them, 'Do not tell anyone that I am the Christ.'"

Mark 8:31

Son of Man

This is an important title for Jesus.

would be rejected by the elders and the chief priests and the scribes, and would be killed, and after three days rise up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the elders and the chief priests and the scribes would reject him, and that men would kill him, and that after three days he would rise up"

Mark 8:32

He spoke that message openly

Possible meanings are 1) "He said this so that people could hear him" or 2) "He said this in a way that was easy to understand."

began to rebuke him

Peter rebuked Jesus for saying the things he said would happen to the Son of Man. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "began to rebuke him for saying these things"

Mark 8:33

Connecting Statement:

After rebuking Peter for his not wanting Jesus to die and rise, Jesus tells both his disciples and the crowd how to follow him.

Get behind me, Satan

Jesus means that Peter is acting like Satan because Peter is trying to prevent Jesus from accomplishing what God sent him to do. Alternate translation: "Get behind me, because you are acting like Satan"

Get behind me

"Get away from me"

Mark 8:34

follow me

Following Jesus here represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: "be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

take up his cross, and follow me

"carry his cross and follow me." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. Alternate translation: "must obey me even to the point of suffering and dying"

follow me

Following Jesus here represents obeying him. Alternate translation: "obey me"

Mark 8:35

For whoever wants

"For anyone who wants"

life

This refers to both physical life and spiritual life.

for my sake and for the gospel

"because of me and because of the gospel." Jesus is talking about people who lose their lives because they follow Jesus and the gospel. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "because he follows me and tells others the gospel"

Mark 8:36

What does it profit a person to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Even if a person gains the whole world, it will not benefit him if he forfeits his life."

to gain the whole world and then forfeit his life

This can also be expressed as a condition starting with the word "if." Alternate translation: "if he gains the whole world and then forfeits his life"

to gain the whole world

The words "the whole world" are an exaggeration for great riches. Alternate translation: "to gain everything he ever wanted"

forfeit

To forfeit something is to lose it or to have another person take it away.

Mark 8:37

What can a person give in exchange for his life?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "There is nothing a person can give in exchange for his life." or "No one can give anything in exchange for his life."

What can a person give

If in your language "giving" requires someone to receive what is given, "God" can be stated as the receiver. Alternate translation: "What can a person give to God"

Mark 8:38

ashamed of me and my words

"ashamed of me and my message"

in this adulterous and sinful generation

Jesus speaks of this generation as "adulterous," meaning that they are unfaithful in their relationship with God. Alternate translation: "in this generation of people who have committed adultery against God and are very sinful" or "in this generation of people who are unfaithful to God and are very sinful"

the Son of Man will be ashamed

Jesus speaks of himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will be ashamed"

when he comes

"when he comes back"

in the glory of his Father

When Jesus returns he will have the same glory as his Father.

with the holy angels

"accompanied by the holy angels"

Chapter 9

Mark 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

"transfigured"

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Mark says in this chapter that Jesus's clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory and fear)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Hyperbole

Jesus said things that he did not expect his followers to understand literally. When he said, "If your hand causes you to stumble, cut it off" ([Mark 9:43](#)), he was exaggerating so they would know that they should stay away from anything that caused them to sin, even if it was something they loved or thought they needed.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Elijah and Moses

Elijah and Moses suddenly appeared to Jesus, James, John, and Peter, and then they disappeared. All four of them saw Elijah and Moses, and because Elijah and Moses spoke with Jesus, the reader should understand that Elijah and Moses appeared physically.

"Son of Man"

Jesus referred to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus used a paradox when he said, "If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all and servant of all" ([Mark 9:35](#)).

Mark 9:1

He said to them
"Jesus said to his disciples"

the kingdom of God come with power
The kingdom of God coming represents God showing himself as king. Alternate translation: "God show himself with great power as king"

Mark 9:2

alone by themselves
The author uses the reflexive pronoun "themselves" here to emphasize that they were alone and that only Jesus, Peter, James, and John went up the mountain.

he was transfigured
"Transfigure" means for a person's outward appearance to change. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his appearance had changed" or "he appeared very different"

before them
"in front of them"

Mark 9:3

radiantly brilliant
"shining" or "glowing." Jesus's garments were so white they were emitting or giving off light.

extremely
"very"

whiter than any bleacher on earth could bleach them
Bleaching describes the process of making natural white wool even whiter by using chemicals like bleach or ammonia. Alternate translation: "whiter than any person on earth could whiten them"

Mark 9:4

Elijah with Moses appeared
It may be helpful to state who these men are. Alternate translation: "two prophets who had lived long ago, Elijah and Moses, appeared"

they were talking
The word "they" refers to Elijah and Moses.

Mark 9:5

Peter answered and said to Jesus
"Peter said to Jesus." Here the word "answered" is used to introduce Peter into the conversation. Peter was not answering a question.

it is good for us to be here
It is not clear whether "us" refers only to Peter, James, and John, or if it refers to everyone there, including Jesus, Elijah, and Moses. If you can translate so that both options are possible, do so.

shelters
simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

Mark 9:6

For he did not know what to say, for they were terrified
This parenthetical sentence tells background information about Peter, James, and John.

they were terrified
"they were very frightened" or "they were very afraid"

Mark 9:7

came and overshadowed
"appeared and covered"

Then a voice came out of the cloud
Here "a voice came out" is a metonym for someone speaking. It can also be stated clearly who spoke.
Alternate translation: "Then someone spoke from the cloud" or "Then God spoke from the cloud"

This is my beloved Son. Listen to him
God the Father expresses his love for his "beloved Son," the Son of God.

beloved Son
This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

Mark 9:8

when they looked
Here "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

Mark 9:9

he commanded them to tell no one ... until the Son of Man had risen
This implies that he was permitting them to tell people about what they had seen after he rose from being dead.

risen from the dead
"risen from among the dead." This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase "the dead" refers to "dead people" and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: "risen from death"

Mark 9:10

rising from the dead
"to rise from among the dead." This speaks of becoming alive again. The phrase "the dead" refers to "dead people" and is a metonym for death. Alternate translation: "rising from death"

So they kept the matter to themselves
Here "kept the matter to themselves" is an idiom that means they did not tell anyone about what they had seen. Alternate translation: "So they did not tell anyone about what they had seen"

Mark 9:11

Connecting Statement:

Though Peter, James, and John wondered what Jesus might mean by "rising from the dead," they asked him instead about Elijah's coming.

They asked him

The word "they" refers to Peter, James, and John.

Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come first? Prophecy foretold that Elijah would come again from heaven. Then the Messiah, who is the Son of Man, would come to rule and reign. The disciples are confused about how the Son of Man could die and rise again. Alternate translation: "Why do the scribes say that Elijah must come before the Messiah comes?"

Mark 9:12

Elijah does come first to restore all things

By saying this, Jesus affirms that Elijah would come first.

Why then is it written ... be despised?

Jesus uses this question to remind his disciples that the scriptures also teach that the Son of Man must suffer and be despised. This may be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "But I also want you to consider what is written about the Son of Man. The scriptures say that he must suffer many things and be hated."

be despised

This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people would hate him"

Mark 9:13

they did whatever they wanted to him

It may be helpful to state what people did to Elijah. Alternate translation: "our leaders treated him very badly, just as they wanted to do"

Mark 9:14

Connecting Statement:

When Peter, James, John, and Jesus came down from the mountain, they found the scribes arguing with the other disciples.

When they came to the disciples

Jesus, Peter, James, and John returned to the other disciples who had not gone with them up the mountain.

they saw a great crowd around them

"Jesus and those three disciples saw a great crowd around the other disciples"

scribes were arguing with them

The scribes were arguing with the disciples who had not gone with Jesus.

Mark 9:15

was amazed

It may be helpful to state why they were amazed.

Alternate translation: "was amazed that Jesus had come"

Mark 9:16

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 9:17

He has a spirit

This means the boy is possessed by an unclean spirit.

"He has an unclean spirit" or "He is possessed by an unclean spirit"

Mark 9:18

down, and he foams at the mouth, grinds his teeth, and becomes A convulsion, or seizure, can cause a person to have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to come out of the mouth. If your language has a way to describe that, you could use it. Alternate translation: "down, and bubbles come out of his mouth, and he grinds his teeth and becomes"

becomes rigid

"becomes stiff" or "his body becomes rigid"

they could not

This refers to the disciples not being about to drive the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: "they could not drive it out of him"

Mark 9:19

He answered them

Though it was the boy's father who made a request of Jesus, Jesus responds to the whole crowd. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Jesus responded to the crowd"

Unbelieving generation

"You unbelieving generation." Jesus calls the crowd this as he begins to respond to them.

how long will I have to stay with you? How long will I bear with you?

Jesus uses these questions to express his frustration. Both questions have the same meaning. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "Your unbelief tires me! I wonder how long I must bear with you."

bear with you

"endure you" or "put up with you"

Bring him to me

"Bring the boy to me"

Mark 9:20

spirit

This refers to the unclean spirit. See how you translated this in Mark 9:17.

convulsion

This is the violent shaking of a person's body that can occur when that person has no control over his body.

Mark 9:21

For how much time

"How long"

Since childhood

"Since he was a small child." It may be helpful to state this as a full sentence. Alternate translation: "He has been like this since he was a small child"

Mark 9:22

have pity

"have compassion"

Mark 9:23

'If you are able?'

Jesus repeated what the man had said to him. Alternate translation: "Do you say to me 'If you are able?'" or "Why do you say 'If you are able?'"

'If you are able?'

Jesus used this question to rebuke the man's doubt. It can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not say to me, 'If you are able.'" or "You ask me if I am able. Of course I am able."

All things are possible for the one who believes

"God can do anything for people who believe in him"

for the one

"for the person" or "for anyone"

believes

This refers to belief in God. Alternate translation: "believes in God"

Mark 9:24

Help my unbelief

The man is asking Jesus to help him overcome his unbelief and increase his faith. Alternate translation: "Help me when I do not believe" or "Help me have more faith"

Mark 9:25

the crowd running to them

This means that more people were running toward where Jesus was and that the crowd there was growing larger.

You mute and deaf spirit

The words "mute" and "deaf" can be explained.

Alternate translation: "You unclean spirit, you who are causing the boy to be unable to speak and unable to hear"

Mark 9:26

It cried out

"The unclean spirit cried out"

convulsed the boy greatly

"shook the boy violently"

came out

It is implied that the spirit came out of the boy.

Alternate translation: "came out of the boy"

The boy looked like one who was dead

The boy's appearance is compared to that of a dead person. Alternate translation: "The boy appeared dead" or "The boy looked like a dead person"

so that many

"so that many people"

Mark 9:27

took him by the hand

This means that Jesus grasped the boy's hand with his own hand. Alternate translation: "grasped the boy by the hand"

lifted him up
"helped him get up"

Mark 9:28

privately
This means they were alone.

cast it out
"cast the unclean spirit out." This refers to casting the spirit out of the boy. Alternate translation: "cast the unclean spirit out of the boy"

Mark 9:29

This kind cannot be cast out except by prayer
The words "cannot" and "except" are both negative words. In some languages it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "This kind can be cast out only by prayer"

This kind
This describes unclean spirits. Alternate translation: "This kind of unclean spirit"

Mark 9:30

Connecting Statement:
After he heals the demon-possessed boy, Jesus and his disciples leave the house where they are staying. He takes time to teach his disciples alone.

They went out from there
"Jesus and his disciples left that region"

passed through
"traveled through" or "passed by"

Mark 9:31

for he was teaching his disciples
Jesus was teaching his disciples privately, away from the crowd. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "for he was teaching his disciples privately"

The Son of Man will be given over
This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone will give the Son of Man over"

The Son of Man
Here Jesus refers to himself as the Son of Man. This is an important title for Jesus. "I, the Son of Man,"

into the hands of men
Here "hands" is a metonym for control. Alternate translation: "into the control of men" or "so that men will be able to control him"

When he has been put to death, after three days he
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "After they have put him to death and three days have passed, he"

Mark 9:32

they were afraid to ask him
They were afraid to ask Jesus what his statement meant. Alternate translation: "they were afraid to ask him what it meant"

Mark 9:33

Connecting Statement:
When they come to Capernaum, Jesus teaches his disciples about being humble servants.

they came to
"they arrived at." The word "they" refers to Jesus and his disciples.

were you discussing
"were you discussing with one another"

Mark 9:34

they were silent
They were silent because they were ashamed to tell Jesus what they had been discussing. Alternate translation: "they were silent because they were ashamed"

who was the greatest
Here "the greatest" refers to "the greatest" among the disciples. Alternate translation: "who was the greatest among them"

Mark 9:35

If anyone wants to be first, he must be last of all
Here the words "first" and "last" are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the "most important" as being "first" and of being the "least important" as being "last." Alternate translation: "If anyone wants God to consider him to be the most important person of all, he must consider himself to be the least important of all"

of all ... of all
"of all people ... of all people"

Mark 9:36

in their midst
"among them." The word "their" refers to the crowd.

He took him in his arms
This means that he hugged the child or picked him up and placed him on his lap.

Mark 9:37

such a child
"a child like this"

in my name
This means to do something because of love for Jesus.
Alternate translation: "because he loves me" or "for my sake"

the one who sent me
This refers to God, who has sent him to earth. Alternate translation: "God, who has sent me"

Mark 9:38

John said to him
"John said to Jesus"

driving out demons
"sending away demons." This refers to casting demons out of people. Alternate translation: "driving demons out of people"

in your name
Here "name" is associated with Jesus's authority and power. Alternate translation: "by the authority of your name" or "by the power of your name"

he does not follow us
This means that he is not among their group of disciples. Alternate translation: "he is not one of us" or "he does not walk with us"

Mark 9:39

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 9:40

is not against us
"is not opposing us"

is for us
It can be explained clearly what this means. Alternate translation: "is trying to achieve the same goals that we are"

Mark 9:41

gives you a cup of water to drink in my name because you belong to Christ
Jesus speaks about giving someone a cup of water as an example of how one person may help another. This is a metaphor for helping someone in any way.

not lose
This negative sentence emphasizes the positive meaning. In some languages, it is more natural to use a positive statement. Alternate translation: "definitely receive"

Mark 9:42

millstone
a large, round stone used for grinding grain into flour

Mark 9:43

If your hand causes you to stumble
Here "hand" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your hand. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your hands"

to enter into life maimed
"to be maimed and then to enter into life" or "to be maimed before entering into life"

to enter into life
Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

maimed
missing a body part as a result of having it removed or being injured. Here it refers to missing a hand.
Alternate translation: "without a hand" or "missing a hand"

into the unquenchable fire
"where the fire cannot be put out"

Mark 9:44

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 9:45

If your foot causes you to stumble

Here the word "foot" is a metonym for desiring to do something sinful that you would do with your feet, such as going to a place you should not go to. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful with one of your feet"

to enter into life lame

"to be lame and then to enter into life" or "to be lame before entering into life"

to enter into life

Dying and then beginning to live eternally is spoken of as entering into life. Alternate translation: "to enter into eternal life" or "to die and begin to live forever"

lame

"unable to walk easily." Here it refers not being able to walk well because of missing a foot. Alternate translation: "without a foot" or "missing a foot"

be thrown into hell

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell"

Mark 9:46

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 9:47

If your eye causes you to stumble, tear it out

Here the word "eye" is a metonym for either 1) desiring to sin by looking at something. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful by looking at something, tear your eye out" or 2) Desiring to sin because of what you have looked at. Alternate translation: "If you want to do something sinful because of what you look at, tear your eye out"

to enter into the kingdom of God with one eye than to have two eyes

This refers to the state of a person's physical body when he dies. A person does not take his physical body with

him into eternity. Alternate translation: "to enter into the kingdom of God after having lived on earth with only one eye than to have lived on earth with two eyes"

to be thrown into hell

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "for God to throw you into hell"

Mark 9:48

where their worm does not die

The meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "where worms that eat people there do not die"

Mark 9:49

everyone will be salted with fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will salt everyone with fire" or "Just as salt purifies a sacrifice, God will purify everyone by allowing them to suffer"

will be salted with fire

Here "fire" is a metaphor for suffering, and putting salt on people is a metaphor for purifying them. So "will be salted with fire" is a metaphor for being purified through suffering. Alternate translation: "will be made pure in the fire of suffering" or "will suffer in order to be purified as a sacrifice is purified with salt"

Mark 9:50

its saltiness

"its salty taste"

how can you make it salty again?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you cannot make it salty again."

salty again

"taste salty again"

Have salt among yourselves

Jesus speaks of doing good things for one another as if good things were salt that people possess. Alternate translation: "Do good to each other, like salt adds flavor to food"

Chapter 10

Mark 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 10:7-8.

Special concepts in this chapter

Jesus's teaching about divorce

The Pharisees wanted to find a way to make Jesus say that it is good to break the law of Moses, so they asked him about divorce. Jesus tells how God originally designed marriage to show that the Pharisees taught wrongly about divorce.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. When Jesus spoke of "the cup which I will drink," he was speaking of the pain he would suffer on the cross as if it were a bitter, poisonous liquid in a cup.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. Jesus used a paradox when he said, "Whoever wishes to become great among you must be your servant" ([Mark 10:43](#)).

Mark 10:1

Connecting Statement:

After Jesus and his disciples leave Capernaum, Jesus reminds the Pharisees, as well as his disciples, what God really expects in marriage and divorce.

Jesus left that place

Jesus's disciples were traveling with him. They were leaving Capernaum. Alternate translation: "Jesus and his disciples left Capernaum"

and to the area beyond the Jordan River

"and to the land on the other side of the Jordan River" or "and to the area east of the Jordan River"

He was teaching them again

The word "them" refers to the crowds.

he was accustomed to do

"was his custom" or "he usually did"

Mark 10:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 10:3

What did Moses command you

Moses gave the law to their ancestors, which they now were also supposed to follow. Alternate translation:

"What did Moses command your ancestors about this"

Mark 10:4

a certificate of divorce

This was a paper saying that the woman was no longer his wife.

Mark 10:5

"It was because ... this law," Jesus said to them.

In some languages speakers do not interrupt a quote to say who is speaking. Rather they say who is speaking at the beginning or end of the complete quote. Alternate translation: "Jesus said to them, 'It was because ... this law.'"

because of your hard hearts that he wrote you this law

Long before this time, Moses wrote this law for the Jews and their descendants because they had hard hearts. The Jews of Jesus's time also had hard hearts, so Jesus included them by using the words "your" and "you." Alternate translation: "because your ancestors had hard hearts like yours that he wrote this law"

your hard hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for a person's inner being or mind. The phrase "hard hearts" is a metaphor for "stubbornness." Alternate translation: "your stubbornness"

Mark 10:6

God made them

"God made people"

Mark 10:7

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to quote what God said in the book of Genesis.

For this reason

"Therefore" or "Because of this"

be united to his wife

"join with his wife"

Mark 10:8

and the two ... one flesh

Jesus finishes quoting what God said in the book of Genesis.

they are no longer two, but one flesh

This is a metaphor to illustrate their close union as husband and wife. Alternate translation: "the two people are like one person" or "they are no longer two, but together they are one body"

Mark 10:9

Therefore what God has joined together, let no man tear apart

The phrase "what God has joined together" refers to any married couple. Alternate translation: "Therefore since God has joined together husband and wife, let no one tear them apart"

Mark 10:10

When they were

"When Jesus and his disciples were"

were in the house

Jesus's disciples were speaking to him privately.

Alternate translation: were alone in the house"

asked him again about this

The word "this" refers to the conversation that Jesus had just had with the Pharisees about divorce.

Mark 10:11

Whoever

"Anyone who"

commits adultery against her

Here "her" refers to the first woman he was married to.

Mark 10:12

she commits adultery

In this situation she commits adultery again her previous husband. Alternate translation: "she commits adultery against him" or "she commits adultery against the first man"

Mark 10:13

Connecting Statement:

When the disciples rebuke the people for bringing their little children to Jesus, he blesses the children and reminds the disciples that people must be as humble as a child to enter the kingdom of God.

Then they brought

"Now people were bringing." This is the next event in the story.

he might touch them

This means that Jesus would touch them with his hands and bless them. Alternate translation: "he might touch them with his hands and bless them" or "he might lay his hands on them and bless them"

rebuked them
"rebuked the people"

Mark 10:14

Jesus noticed it
The word "it" refers to the disciples rebuking the people who were bringing the children to Jesus.

was angry
Jesus was angry with the disciples.

Permit the little children to come to me, and do not forbid them
These two clauses have similar meanings, repeated for emphasis. In some languages it is more natural to emphasize this in another way. Alternate translation: "Be sure to allow the little children to come to me"

do not forbid
"allow"

for the kingdom of God belongs to those who are like them
The kingdom belonging to people represents the kingdom including them. Alternate translation: "the kingdom of God includes people who are like them" or "because only people like them are members of the kingdom of God"

Mark 10:15

whoever will not receive ... child will definitely not enter it
"if anyone will not receive ... child, he will definitely not enter it"

as a little child
Jesus is comparing how people must receive the kingdom of God to how little children would receive it. Alternate translation: "in the same manner as a little child would"

will not receive the kingdom of God
"will not accept God as their king"

definitely not enter it
The word "it" refers to the kingdom of God.

Mark 10:16

he took the children into his arms
"he hugged the children"

Mark 10:17

to inherit eternal life
Here the man speaks of "receiving" as if it were "inheriting." This metaphor is used to emphasize the

importance of receiving. Also, "inherit" here does not mean that someone has to die first. Alternate translation: to receive eternal life"

Mark 10:18

Why do you call me good?
Jesus asks this question to remind the man that no man is good the way God is good. Alternate translation: "You do not understand what you are saying when you call me good."

No one is good except God alone
This double negative emphasizes that God is the only one who is good. Alternate translation: "The only one who is good is God"

Mark 10:19

do not testify falsely
"do not testify falsely against anyone" or "do not lie about someone in court"

Mark 10:20

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 10:21

One thing you lack
"There is one thing you are missing." Here "lack" is a metaphor for needing to do something. Alternate translation: "One thing you need to do" or "There is one thing you have not yet done" or

give it to the poor
Here the word "it" refers to the things he sells and is a metonym for the money he receives when he sells them. Alternate translation: "give the money to the poor"

the poor
This refers to poor people. Alternate translation: "poor people"

treasure
wealth, valuable things

Mark 10:22

had many possessions
"owned many things"

Mark 10:23

How difficult it is
"It is very difficult"

Mark 10:24

Jesus said to them again
"Jesus said to his disciples again"

Children, how
"My children, how." Jesus is teaching them as a father would teach his children. Alternate translation: "My friends, how"

how hard it is
"it is very hard"

Mark 10:25

It is easier for a camel ... kingdom of God
It is impossible for a camel to go through the eye of a needle. Jesus uses an exaggeration to emphasize how very difficult it is for rich people to get into the kingdom of God.

It is easier for a camel
This speaks of an impossible situation. If you cannot state this in this way in your language, you can use the word "would." Alternate translation: "It would be easier for a camel"

the eye of a needle
Here "the eye" refers to the small hole in one end of a sewing needle. The thread goes through this hole and ties to the needle. Alternate translation: "the hole of a needle"

Mark 10:26

They were
"The disciples were"

Then who can be saved?
This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "If that is so, then no one will be saved!"

Mark 10:27

With people it is impossible, but not with God
The understood information may be supplied. Alternate translation: "It is impossible for people to save themselves, but God can save them"

Mark 10:28

Look, we have left everything and have followed you
Here the word "Look" is used to draw attention to the words that come next. Similar emphasis can be expressed in other ways. Alternate translation: "We have left everything and have followed you"

have left everything
"have left everything behind"

Mark 10:29

Truly I say to you, there is no one
This sentence ends in verse 30. It can be stated in positive form. If so, in verse 30, "who will not receive" would become "will receive." Alternate translation: "Truly I say to you, everyone"

or lands
"or plots of ground" or "or the land that he owns"

for my sake
"for my cause" or "for me"

for the gospel
"to proclaim the gospel"

Mark 10:30

who will not receive
This sentence began in verse 29. If you the sentence was stated in positive form in verse 29, verse 30 would be changed to positive form also. Alternate translation: "will receive"

this age
"the world as you know it" or "this present age"

brothers and sisters and mothers and children
Like the list in verse 29, this describes the family in general. The word "fathers" is missing in verse 30, but it does not significantly change the meaning.

with persecutions, and in the world to come, eternal life
This can be reworded so that the ideas in the abstract noun "persecution" are expressed with the verb "persecute." Because the sentence is so long and complicated, "will receive" can be repeated. Alternate translation: "and even though people persecute them, in the world to come, they will receive eternal life"

in the world to come
"in the future world" or "in the future"

Mark 10:31

are first will be last, and the last first

Here the words "first" and "last" are opposites of one another. Jesus speaks of being the "important" as being "first" and of being the "unimportant" as being "last." Alternate translation: "are important will be unimportant, and those who are unimportant will be important"

the last first

The phrase "the last" refers to people who are "last." Also, the understood verb in this clause may be supplied. Alternate translation: "those who are last will be first"

Mark 10:32

They were on the road ... and Jesus was going ahead of them
"Jesus and his disciples were walking on the road ... and Jesus was in front of his disciples"

those who were following behind

"those who were following behind them." Some people were walking behind Jesus and his disciples.

Mark 10:33

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

the Son of Man will

Jesus is speaking about himself. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, will"

the Son of Man will be given over to

The words "given over" mean "betrayed" or "put into the power of." This can be stated in active form.

Alternate translation: "someone will hand the Son of Man to" or "they will hand the Son of Man over to"

They will condemn

The word "They" refers to the chief priests and the scribes.

give him over to the Gentiles

"betray him to the Gentiles" or "put him under the control of the Gentiles"

Mark 10:34

They will mock

"People will mock"

put him to death

"kill him"

he will rise

This refers to rising from the dead. Alternate translation: "he will rise from being dead"

Mark 10:35

we ... us

These words refer only to James and John.

Mark 10:36

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Mark 10:37

in your glory

"when you are glorified." The phrase "in your glory" refers to when Jesus is glorified and rules over his kingdom. Alternate translation: "when you rule in your kingdom"

Mark 10:38

You do not know

"You do not understand"

drink the cup which I will drink

Here "cup" refers to what Jesus must suffer. Suffering is often referred to as drinking from a cup. Alternate translation: "drink the cup of suffering that I will drink" or "drink from the cup of suffering that I will drink from"

be baptized with the baptism with which I will be baptized

Here "baptism" and being baptized represent suffering. Just as water covers a person during baptism, suffering will overwhelm Jesus. Alternate translation: "endure the baptism of suffering which I will suffer"

Mark 10:39

We are able

They respond this way, meaning that they are able to drink the same cup and endure the same baptism.

you will drink

"you will drink as well"

Mark 10:40

But who is to sit at my right hand or at my left hand is not mine to give
"But I am not the one who allows people to sit at my right hand or my left hand"

but it is for those for whom it has been prepared
"but those places are for those for whom they have been prepared." The word "it" refers to the places to his right hand and to his left hand.

it has been prepared
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has prepared it" or "God has prepared them"

Mark 10:41

heard about this
The word "this" refers to James and John asking to sit at Jesus's right and left hands.

Mark 10:42

Jesus called them
"Jesus called his disciples"

those who are considered rulers of the Gentiles
This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are 1) people in general consider these people the rulers of the Gentiles. Alternate translation: "those whom people consider to be the rulers of the Gentiles" or 2) the Gentiles consider these people their rulers. Alternate translation: "those whom the Gentiles think of as their rulers"

dominate
have control or power over

exercise authority
"flaunt their authority." This means that they show or use their authority in an overbearing way.

Mark 10:43

But it is not this way among you
This refers back to the previous verse about the Gentile rulers. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But do not be like them"

become great
"be highly respected"

Mark 10:44

to be first
This is a metaphor for being the most important.
Alternate translation: "to be the most important"

Mark 10:45

For the Son of Man did not come to be served
This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "For the Son of Man did not come to have people serve him"

to be served, but to serve
"to be served by people, but to serve people"

for many
"for many people"

Mark 10:46

Connecting Statement:
As Jesus and his disciples continue walking toward Jerusalem, Jesus heals blind Bartimaeus, who then walks with them.

the son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus, a blind beggar
"a blind beggar named Bartimaeus, the son of Timaeus." Bartimaeus is the name of a man. Timaeus is his father's name.

Mark 10:47

When he heard that it was Jesus
Bartimaeus heard people saying that it was Jesus.
Alternate translation: "When he heard people saying that it was Jesus"

Son of David
Jesus is called the Son of David because he is a descendant of King David. Alternate translation: "You who are the Messiah descended from King David"

Mark 10:48

Many rebuked
"Many people rebuked"

all the more
"even more"

Mark 10:49

commanded him to be called.
This can be translated in active form or as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "commanded others to call

him." or "commanded them, 'Call him to come over here.'"

Mark 10:51

They called
The word "They" refers to the crowd.

answered him
"answered the blind man"

Be brave
"Have courage" or "Do not be afraid"

to receive my sight
"to be able to see"

He is calling for you
"Jesus is calling for you"

Mark 10:52

Mark 10:50

Your faith has healed you
This phrase is written this way to place emphasis on the man's faith. Jesus heals the man because he believes that Jesus can heal him. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I am healing you because you have believed in me"

sprang up
"jumped up"

he followed him
"he followed Jesus"

Chapter 1

Luke 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 1:46-55, 68-79.

Special concepts in this chapter

"He will be called John"

Most people in the ancient Near East would give a child the same name as someone in their family. People were surprised that Elizabeth and Zechariah named their son John, because there was no one else in their family with that name.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Luke's language is simple and straightforward. He does not use many figures of speech.

Luke 1:1

General Information:
Luke explains why he writes to Theophilus.

of the things that have been accomplished among us
"about those things that have happened among us" or
"about those events that have happened among us"

among us
No one knows for sure who Theophilus was. If he was a Christian, the word "us" here would include him and so be inclusive, and if not, it would be exclusive.

Luke 1:2

were eyewitnesses and servants of the word
An "eyewitness" is a person who saw something happen, and a servant of the word is a person who serves God by telling people God's message. You may need to make it clear how they were servants of the word. Alternate translation: "saw what had happened and served God by telling people his message"

servants of the word
The word "word" is a synecdoche for a message made up of many words. Alternate translation: "servants of the message" or "servants of God's message"

Luke 1:3

accurately investigated
"carefully researched." Luke was careful to find out exactly what happened. He probably talked to the different people who saw what happened to make sure that what he wrote down about these events was correct.

most excellent Theophilus
Luke said this to show honor and respect for Theophilus. This may mean that Theophilus was an important government official. This section should use the style that your culture uses to address people of high status. Some people may prefer to also put this greeting at the beginning and say, "To most excellent Theophilus" or "Dear most excellent Theophilus."

most excellent
"honorable" or "noble"

Theophilus
This name means "friend of God." It may describe this man's character or it may have been his actual name. Most translations have it as a name.

Luke 1:4

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 1:5

General Information:

Zechariah and Elizabeth are introduced. Verses 5-7 give background information about them.

Connecting Statement:

The angel prophesies the birth of John.

In the days of Herod, king of Judea

The phrase "In the days of" is used to indicate a new event. Alternate translation: "During the time that King Herod ruled over Judea"

there was a certain

"there was a particular" or "there was a." This is a way of introducing a new character in a story. Consider how your language does this.

division

It is understood that this refers to the priests. Alternate translation: "division of priests" or "group of priests"

of Abijah

"who descended from Abijah." Abijah was an ancestor of this group of priests and all of them were descended from Aaron, who was the first Israelite priest.

Luke 1:6

before God

"in God's sight" or "in God's opinion"

all the commandments and statutes of the Lord

"all that the Lord had commanded and required"

Luke 1:7

But

This contrast word shows that what follows here is the opposite of what is expected. People expected that if they did what was right, God would allow them to have children. Although this couple did what was right, they did not have any children.

they were both advanced in their days

This is a euphemism that says that they were very old. Alternate translation: "they had both lived many days" or "they had both lived many years" or "they were both very old"

Luke 1:8

Now it came about

This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story from the background information to the participants.

Zechariah was in God's presence, carrying out the priestly duties. It is implied that Zechariah was in God's temple and that these priestly duties were part of worshiping God.

in the order of his division

"when it was his group's turn" or "when the time came for his group to serve"

Luke 1:9

According to the customary way of choosing which priest would ... burn incense

This sentence gives us information about priestly duties.

the customary way

"the traditional method" or "the usual way"

chosen by lot

A lot was a marked stone that was thrown or rolled on the ground in order to decide something. The priests believed that God guided the lot to show them which priest he wanted them to choose.

to burn incense

The priests were to burn sweet-smelling incense as an offering to God each morning and evening on a special altar inside the temple.

Luke 1:10

The whole crowd of people

"A large number of people" or "Many people"

outside

The courtyard was the enclosed area surrounding the temple. Alternate translation: "outside the temple building" or "in the courtyard outside the temple"

at the hour

"at the set time." It is unclear if this was the morning or evening time for the incense offering.

Luke 1:11

Connecting Statement:

While Zechariah does his duty in the temple, an angel comes from God to give him a message.

Now

This word marks the beginning of the action in the story.

appeared to him
"suddenly came to him" or "was suddenly there with Zechariah." This expresses that the angel was present with Zechariah, and not simply a vision.

Luke 1:12

Zechariah ... was troubled ... fear fell on him
These two phrases mean the same thing, and emphasize how afraid Zechariah was.

When Zechariah saw him
"When Zechariah saw the angel." Zechariah was afraid because the appearance of the angel was frightening. He had not done anything wrong, so he was not afraid that the angel would punish him.

fear fell on him
Fear is described as if it was something that attacked or overpowered Zechariah.

Luke 1:13

Do not be afraid
"Stop being afraid of me" or "You do not need to be afraid of me"

your prayer has been heard
This can be stated in active form. It is implied that God will give Zechariah what he has asked for. Alternate translation: "God has heard your prayer and will give you what you have asked for"

bear you a son
"have a son for you" or "give birth to your son"

Luke 1:14

You will have joy and gladness
The words "joy" and "gladness" mean the same thing and are used to emphasize how great the joy will be. Alternate translation: "you will have great joy" or "you will be very glad"

at his birth
"because of his birth"

Luke 1:15

For he will be great
"This is because he will be great." Zechariah and the "many" will rejoice because John will be "great in the sight of the Lord." The rest of verse 15 tells how God wants John to live.

he will be great in the sight of the Lord
"he will be a very important person for the Lord" or "God will consider him to be very important"

he will be filled with the Holy Spirit
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit will empower him" or "the Holy Spirit will guide him" Make sure it does not sound similar to what an evil spirit might do to a person.

from his mother's womb
"even while he is in his mother's womb" or "even before he is born"

Luke 1:16

Many of the descendants of Israel will be turned to the Lord their God
Here "be turned" is a metaphor for a person repenting and worshiping the Lord. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He will cause many of the people of Israel to repent and worship the Lord their God"

Luke 1:17

will go before the face of the Lord
Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them.

the face of the Lord
Here "the face of" someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person's presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: "the Lord"

in the spirit and power of Elijah
"with the same spirit and power that Elijah had." The word "spirit" either refers to God's Holy Spirit or to Elijah's attitude or way of thinking. Make sure that the word "spirit" does not mean ghost or evil spirit.

turn the hearts of the fathers to the children
"persuade fathers to care about their children again" or "cause fathers to restore their relationships with their children"

turn the hearts
The heart is spoken of as if it were something that could be turned to go in a different direction. This refers to changing someone's attitude toward something.

the disobedient
Here this refers to people who do not obey the Lord.

make ready for the Lord a people prepared for him
What the people will be prepared to do can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "make ready for the Lord a people who are prepared to believe his message"

Luke 1:18

How can I know this?
"How can I know for sure that what you said will happen?" Here, "know" means to learn by experience, suggesting Zechariah was asking for a sign as proof. Alternate translation: "What can you do to prove to me that this will happen?"

my wife is advanced in her days
This is a euphemism that says that she was very old. See how you translated similar words in [Luke 1:7]

Luke 1:19

I am Gabriel, who stands in the presence of God
This is stated as a rebuke to Zechariah. The presence of Gabriel, coming directly from God, should be enough proof for Zechariah.

who stands
"who serves"

I was sent to speak to you
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God sent me to speak to you"

Luke 1:20

Behold
"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important"

silent, unable to speak
These mean the same thing, and are repeated to emphasize the completeness of his silence. Alternate translation: "completely unable to speak" or "not able to speak at all"

not believe my words
"not believe what I said"

at the right time
"at the appointed time"

Luke 1:21

Now
This marks a shift in the story from what happened inside the temple to what happened outside. Alternate

translation: "While that was happening" or "While the angel and Zechariah were talking"

Luke 1:22

They realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple. He kept on making signs to them and remained silent
These things probably happened at the same time, and Zechariah's signs helped the people understand that he had had a vision. It might be helpful to your audience to change the order to show that. Alternate translation: "He kept on making signs to them and remained silent. So they realized that he had seen a vision while he was in the temple"

a vision
The earlier description indicated that Gabriel actually came to Zechariah in the temple. The people, not knowing that, assumed Zechariah saw a vision.

Luke 1:23

It came about
This phrase moves the story ahead to when Zechariah's service was ended.

he went to his house
Zechariah did not live in Jerusalem, where the temple was located. He traveled to his home town.

Luke 1:24

After these days
The phrase "these days" refers to the time Zechariah was serving in the temple. It is possible to state more clearly what this refers to. Alternate translation: "After Zechariah's time of serving at the temple"

his wife
"Zechariah's wife"

kept herself hidden
"did not leave her house"

Luke 1:25

This is what the Lord has done for me
This phrase refers to the fact that the Lord allowed her to become pregnant.

This is what
This is a positive exclamation. She is very happy with what the Lord has done for her.

looked at me with favor

"to look at" here is an idiom that means "to treat" or "to deal with." Alternate translation: "regarded me kindly" or "had pity on me"

my shame

This refers to the shame she felt when she was not able to have children.

Luke 1:26

In the sixth month

"in the sixth month of Elizabeth's pregnancy." It may be necessary to state this clearly if it would be confused with the sixth month of the year.

the angel Gabriel was sent from God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God told the angel Gabriel to go"

Luke 1:27

a virgin engaged to ... Joseph

Mary's parents had agreed that Mary would marry Joseph. Though they had not had sexual relations, Joseph would have thought and spoken of her as his wife.

who was a descendant of David

"he belonged to the same tribe as King David"

the virgin's name was Mary

This introduces Mary as a new character in the story.

Luke 1:28

He came to her

"The angel came to Mary"

Greetings

This was a common greeting. It means: "Rejoice" or "Be glad."

you who are highly favored!

"you who have received great grace!" or "you who have received special kindness!"

The Lord is with you

"with you" here is an idiom that implies support and acceptance. Alternate translation: "The Lord is pleased with you"

Luke 1:29

she was very confused by his words, and she wondered what kind of greeting this could be

Mary understood the meaning of the individual words, but she did not understand why the angel said this amazing greeting to her.

Luke 1:30

Do not be afraid, Mary

The angel does not want Mary to be afraid of his appearance, because God sent him with a positive message.

you have found favor with God

The idiom "to find favor" means to be positively received by someone. The sentence can be altered to show God as the actor. Alternate translation: "God has decided to give you his grace" or "God is showing you his kindness"

Luke 1:31

you will conceive in your womb and bear a son ... Jesus

Mary will bear "a son" who will be called "the Son of the Most High." Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

Luke 1:32

the Son of the Most High

Mary will bear "a son" who will be called "the Son of the Most High." Jesus is therefore a human son born of a human mother, and he is also the Son of God. These terms should be translated very carefully.

will be called

Possible meanings are 1) "people will call him" or 2) "God will call him"

Son of the Most High

This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

give him the throne of his ancestor David

The throne represents the king's authority to rule.

Alternate translation: "give him authority to rule as king as his ancestor David did"

Luke 1:33

there will be no end to his kingdom

The negative phrase "no end" emphasizes that it continues forever. It could also be stated with a positive

phrase. Alternate translation: "his kingdom will never end"

Luke 1:34

How will this happen

Though Mary did not understand how it could happen, she did not doubt that it would happen.

I have not known any man

Mary used this polite expression to say that she had not engaged in sexual activity. Alternate translation: "I am a virgin"

Luke 1:35

The Holy Spirit will overshadow you

The process of Mary's conception would begin with the Holy Spirit coming to her.

the power of the Most High

It was God's "power" that would supernaturally cause Mary to become pregnant even while she still remained a virgin. Make sure this does not imply any physical or sexual union—this was a miracle.

will overshadow you

"will cover you like a shadow"

So the holy one to be born will be called the Son of God

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So the holy one who will be born they will call the Son of God" or "So the baby that will be born will be holy, and people will call him the Son of God"

the holy one

"the holy child" or "the holy baby"

Son of God

This is an important title for Jesus.

Luke 1:36

See, your relative

"Pay attention, because what I am about to say is both true and important: your relative"

your relative Elizabeth

If you need to state a specific relationship, Elizabeth was probably Mary's aunt or great-aunt.

has also conceived a son in her old age

"Elizabeth has also become pregnant with a son even though she is already very old" or "Elizabeth, even though she is old, has also become pregnant and will bear a son." Make sure it does not sound as though both Mary and Elizabeth were old when they conceived.

the sixth month for her

"the sixth month of her pregnancy"

Luke 1:37

For nothing

"Because nothing" or "This shows that nothing"

nothing will be impossible for God

Elizabeth's pregnancy was proof that God was able to do anything—even enable Mary to become pregnant without her sleeping with a man. The double negatives in this statement can be stated with positive terms. Alternate translation: "everything will be possible for God" or "God can do anything"

Luke 1:38

See, I am the female servant

"Here I am, the female servant" or "I am glad to be the female servant." She is responding humbly and willingly.

I am the female servant of the Lord

Choose an expression that shows her humility and obedience to the Lord. She was not boasting about being the Lord's servant.

Let it be for me

"Let this happen to me." Mary was expressing her willingness for the things to happen that the angel had told her were about to happen.

Luke 1:39

Connecting Statement:

Mary goes to visit her relative Elizabeth, who is going to give birth to John.

arose

This idiom means she not only stood up, but also "got ready." Alternate translation: "started out" or "got ready"

the hill country

"the hilly area" or "the mountainous part of Israel"

Luke 1:40

She went

It is implied that Mary finished her journey before she went in to Zechariah's house. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "When she arrived, she went"

Luke 1:41

Now it happened

The phrase is used to mark a new event in this part of the story.

in her womb

"in Elizabeth's womb"

jumped

moved suddenly

Luke 1:42

cried out with a loud shout and said

The phrases "cried out" and "loud shout" mean the same thing and are used to emphasize how excited Elizabeth was. You may want to combine them into one phrase. Alternate translation: "exclaimed loudly"

Blessed are you among women

The idiom "among women" means "more than any other woman"

the fruit of your womb

Mary's baby is spoken of as if it is the fruit that a plant produces. Alternate translation: "the baby in your womb" or "the baby you will bear"

Luke 1:43

Why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

Elizabeth is not asking for information. She was showing how surprised and happy she was that the mother of the Lord had come to her. Alternate translation: "How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!"

the mother of my Lord

It can be made clear that Elizabeth was calling Mary "the mother of my Lord" by adding the word "you." Alternate translation: "you, the mother of my Lord"

Luke 1:44

For see

This phrase alerts Mary to pay attention to Elizabeth's surprising statement that follows.

when the sound of your greeting came to my ears

Hearing a sound is spoken of as if the sound came to the ears. Alternate translation: "when I heard the sound of your greeting"

jumped for joy

"moved suddenly with joy" or "turned forcefully because he was so happy"

Luke 1:45

Blessed is she who believed ... that were told her from the Lord
Elizabeth is talking about Mary to Mary. Alternate translation: "Blessed are you who believed ... that were told you from the Lord"

Blessed is she who believed

The passive verb can be translated in active form.
Alternate translation: "God will bless her because she believed"

there would be a fulfillment of the things

"the things would actually happen" or "the things would come true"

the things that were told her from the Lord

The word "from" is used here instead of "by" because it was the angel Gabriel whom Mary actually heard speak

Luke 1:46

General Information:

Mary begins a song of praise to the Lord her Savior.

My soul praises

The word "soul" refers to the spiritual part of a person. Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: "My inner being praises" or "I praise"

Luke 1:47

my spirit has rejoiced

Both "soul" and "spirit" refer to the spiritual part of a person. Mary is saying that her worship comes from deep inside her. Alternate translation: "my heart has rejoiced" or "I rejoice"

has rejoiced in

"has felt very joyful about" or "was very happy about"

God my Savior

"God, the One who saves me" or "God, who saves me"

Luke 1:48

For he

"This is because he"

looked at

"looked at with concern" or "cared about"

low condition

"poverty." Mary's family was not rich.

For see

This phrase calls attention to the statement that follows.

from now on

"now and in the future"

all generations

"the people in all generations"

Luke 1:49

the Mighty One has

"God, the Powerful One, has"

his name

Here "name" refers to the entire person of God.

Alternate translation: "he"

Luke 1:50

His mercy

"God's mercy"

from generation to generation

"from one generation to the next generation" or
"throughout every generation" or "to people in every
time period"

Luke 1:51

displayed strength with his arm

Here "his arm" is a metonym that stands for God's
power. Alternate translation: "shown that he is very
powerful"

has scattered those ... hearts

"has caused those ... hearts to run away in different
directions"

who were proud about the thoughts of their hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's inner beings.
Alternate translation: "who were proud in their
thoughts" or "who were proud"

Luke 1:52

He has thrown down princes from their thrones

A throne is a chair that a ruler sits on, and it is a
symbol of his authority. If a prince is brought down
from his throne, it means he no longer has the
authority to reign. Alternate translation: "He has taken

away the authority of princes" or "He has made rulers
stop ruling"

raised up those of low condition

In this word picture, people who are important are
higher than people who are less important. Alternate
translation: "has made humble people important"
or "has given honor to people whom others have not
honored"

of low condition

"in poverty." See how you translated this in Luke 1:48.

Luke 1:53

He has filled the hungry ... the rich he has sent away empty

The contrast between these two opposite actions should
be made clear in the translation if possible.

filled the hungry with good things

Possible meanings are 1) "given the hungry good food
to eat" or 2) "given the needy good things."

Luke 1:54

General Information:

The information in verses 54 and 55 can be rearranged,
as in the UDB, to make the meaning clearer.

He has given help to

"The Lord has helped"

Israel his servant

If readers confuse this with the man named Israel, it
could be translated as "his servant, the nation of Israel"
or "Israel, his servants."

so as to

"in order to"

to remember

God cannot forget. When God "remembers," it is an
idiom that means God acts upon his earlier promise.

Luke 1:55

General Information:

The information in verses 54 and 55 can be rearranged,
as in the UDB, to make the meaning clearer.

as he said to our fathers

"just as he promised our ancestors he would do." This
phrase supplies background information about God's
promise to Abraham. Alternate translation: "because he
promised our ancestors he would be merciful"

his descendants
"Abraham's descendants"

Luke 1:56

returned to her house
"Mary returned to her (Mary's) house" or "Mary
returned to her own house"

Luke 1:57

Now
This word marks the beginning of the next event in the
story.

deliver her baby
"give birth to her baby"

Luke 1:58

Her neighbors and her relatives
"Elizabeth's neighbors and relatives"

shown his great mercy to her
"been very kind to her"

Luke 1:59

Now it happened
This phrase is used here to mark a change in the main
story. Here Luke starts to tell a new part of the story.

on the eighth day
Here "eighth day" refers to the time after the birth of
the baby, counted from the first day, which was the day
he was born. Alternate translation: "on the eighth day
of the baby's life"

they came to circumcise the child
This was often a ceremony where one person
circumcised the baby and friends were there to
celebrate with the family. Alternate translation: "they
came for the baby's circumcision ceremony"

They would have called him
"They were going to name him" or "They wanted to give
him the name"

after the name of his father
"his father's name"

Luke 1:60

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 1:61

by this name
"by that name" or "by the same name"

Luke 1:62

They
This refers to the people who were there for the
circumcision ceremony.

made signs
"motioned." Either Zechariah was unable to hear, as
well as unable to speak, or the people assumed that he
could not hear.

to his father
"to the baby's father"

how he wanted him to be named
"what name Zechariah wanted to give the baby"

Luke 1:63

His father asked for a writing tablet
Since he could not speak, it may be helpful to state this
differently. Alternate translation: "His father indicated
that he wanted them to give him a writing tablet" or
"His father showed that he wanted a writing tablets"

a writing tablet
"something on which to write"

astonished
greatly surprised or amazed

Luke 1:64

his mouth was opened ... his tongue was freed
These two phrases are word pictures that together
emphasize that Zechariah was suddenly able to speak.

his mouth was opened and his tongue was freed
These phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate
translation: "God opened his mouth and freed his
tongue"

Luke 1:65

Fear came on all who lived around them
"All who lived around Zechariah and Elizabeth were
afraid." It may be helpful to state clearly why they were
afraid. Alternate translation: "All who lived around
them were in awe of God because he had done this to
Zechariah"

all who lived around them

The word "all" here is a generalization. Alternate translation: "those who lived around them" or "many who lived in that area"

All these matters were spread throughout all the hill country of Judea

The phrase "these matters were spread" is a metaphor for people talking about them. The passive verb here can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "All these matters were talked about by people throughout all the hill country of Judea" or "People throughout the hill country of Judea talked about all these matters"

Luke 1:66

All who heard them

"All who heard about these matters"

stored them in their hearts

People carefully remembering things so that they can think about them later is spoken of as if they were putting those things safely in their hearts. Alternate translation: "kept them in mind" or "thought carefully about these matters" or "thought a lot about these events"

hearts, saying

"hearts. They asked"

What then will this child become?

"What kind of great person will this baby grow up to be?" It is also possible that this question was meant to be a statement of their surprise at what they had heard about the baby. Alternate translation: "What a great man this child will be!"

the hand of the Lord was with him

The phrase "the hand of the Lord" refers to the Lord's power. Alternate translation: "the Lord's power was with him" or "the Lord was working in him powerfully"

Luke 1:67

Connecting Statement:

Zechariah tells what will happen with his son John.

His father Zechariah was filled with the Holy Spirit and prophesied This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "The Holy Spirit filled his father Zechariah, and Zachariah prophesied"

His father

John's father

prophesied, saying

Consider natural ways of introducing direct quotes in your language. Alternate translation: "prophesied and said" or "prophesied, and this is what he said"

Luke 1:68

the God of Israel

"Israel" here refers to the nation of Israel. The relationship between God and Israel could be stated more directly. Alternate translation: "the God who reigns over Israel" or "the God whom Israel worships"

his people

"God's people"

Luke 1:69

He has raised up a horn of salvation for us in the house of his servant David

The horn of an animal is a symbol of its power to defend itself. To raise up here is to bring into existence or to enable to act. The Messiah is spoken of as if he were a horn with the power to save Israel. Alternate translation: "He has brought to us someone who is in the house of his servant David with the power to save us"

in the house of his servant David

David's "house" here represents his family, specifically, his descendants. Alternate translation: "in the family of his servant David" or "who is a descendant of his servant David"

Luke 1:70

as he spoke

"just as God said"

he spoke by the mouth of his holy prophets from long ago

God speaking by the prophets' mouths represents God causing his prophets to say what he wanted them to say. Alternate translation: "he caused his holy prophets who lived long ago to say"

Luke 1:71

salvation from our enemies

The abstract noun "salvation" can be expressed with the verbs "save" or "rescue." Alternate translation: "who will save us from our enemies"

our enemies ... all who hate us

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are repeated to emphasize how strongly their enemies are against them.

hand

The hand is a metonym for the power that the person uses the hand to exercise. Alternate translation: "power" or "control"

Luke 1:72

to show mercy to

"to be merciful to" or "to act according to his mercy toward"

remember

Here the word "remember" means to keep a commitment or fulfill something.

Luke 1:73

the oath that he swore

These words refer to "his holy covenant" (Luke 1:72).

Luke 1:74

to grant to us

"to make it possible for us"

that we, having been delivered out of the hand of our enemies, would serve him without fear

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that after he rescued us from the hand of our enemies we would serve him without fear"

out of the hand of our enemies

Here "hand" refers to the control or power a person. This could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "from the control of our enemies"

without fear

This refers back to the fear of their enemies. Alternate translation: "without being afraid of our enemies"

Luke 1:75

in holiness and righteousness

This can be restated to remove the abstract nouns "holiness" and "righteousness." Possible meanings are 1) we would serve God in holy and righteous ways. Alternate translation: "doing what is holy and righteous" or 2) we would be holy and righteous. Alternate translation: "being holy and righteous"

before him

This is an idiom which means "in his presence"

Luke 1:76

Yes, and you

Zechariah uses this phrase to begin his direct address to his son. You may have a similar way to direct speech in your language.

you, child, will be called a prophet

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as for you, child, people will know that you are a prophet"

of the Most High

These words are a euphemism for God. Alternate translation: "who serves the Most High" or "who speaks for God Most High"

will go before the face of the Lord

Before the Lord comes, he will go and announce to the people that the Lord will come to them. See how you translated this in Luke 1:17.

the face of the Lord

"the face of" someone can be an idiom that refers to the that person's presence. It is sometimes omitted in translation. Alternate translation: "the Lord" See how you translated this in [Luke 1:17]

to prepare his paths

This is a metaphor that means that John will prepare the people to listen to and believe the Lord's message.

Luke 1:77

to give knowledge of salvation to his people by the forgiveness of their sins

The phrase "give knowledge" is a metaphor for teaching. The abstract nouns "salvation" and "forgiveness" can be expressed with the verbs "save" and "forgive." Alternate translation: "to teach his people salvation through the forgiveness of their sins" or "to teach his people how God saves people by forgiving their sins"

Luke 1:78

because of the tender mercy of our God

It might be helpful to state that God's mercy helps people. Alternate translation: "because God is compassionate and merciful to us"

the sunrise from on high

Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the Savior giving spiritual truth to people is spoken of as if he were a sunrise that shines light on the earth. Alternate

translation: "the Savior, who is like a sunrise, will come from on high"

from on high
"from heaven"

Luke 1:79

to shine
Light is often a metaphor for truth. Here, the spiritual truth that the Savior will provide is spoken of as if it is a sunrise that lights up the earth

shine on
"give knowledge to" or "give spiritual light to"

those who sit in darkness and in the shadow of death
Darkness is here a metaphor for the absence of spiritual truth. Here, people who lack spiritual truth are spoken of as if they are sitting in darkness. Also "shadow of death" represents the threat of death.
Alternate translation: "those who do not know the truth and are in spiritual darkness and fear dying"

guide our feet into the path of peace
Here "guide" is a metaphor for teaching, and "path of peace" is a metaphor for living at peace with God. The phrase "our feet" is a synecdoche that represents the whole person. Alternate translation: "teach us how to live at peace with God"

Luke 1:80

General Information:
This tells briefly about John's growing years.

Now
This word is used here to mark a change in the main story. Luke quickly moves from the birth of John to the beginning of his ministry as an adult.

became strong in spirit
"became spiritually mature" or "strengthened his relationship with God"

was in the wilderness
"lived in the wilderness." Luke does not say at what age John began to live in the wilderness.

until
This does not necessarily mark a stopping point. John continued to live out in the desert even after he started preaching publicly.

the day of his public appearance
"when he began to preach in public"

the day
This is used here in the general sense of "the time" or "the occasion."

Chapter 2

Luke 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 2:14, 29-32.

Luke 2:1

General Information:

This gives background to show why Mary and Joseph have to move at the time of Jesus's birth.

Now

This word marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

it came about that

This phrase is used to show that this is the beginning of an account. If your language has a way of showing the start of an account, you may use that. Some versions do not include this phrase.

Caesar Augustus

"King Augustus" or "Emperor Augustus." Augustus was the first emperor of the Roman Empire.

sent out a decree ordering

This command was probably carried by messengers throughout the empire. Alternate translation: "sent messengers with a decree ordering"

that a census be taken of all the people living in the world

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that they register all the people living in the world" or "that they count all the people in the world and write down their names"

the world

Here the word "world" represents only the part of the world that Caesar August ruled. Alternate translation: "the Empire" or "the Roman world"

Luke 2:2

Quirinius

Quirinius was appointed to be the governor of Syria.

Luke 2:3

everyone went

"everyone started off" or "everyone was going"

his own city

This refers to the cities where people's ancestors lived. People may have lived in a different city. Alternate translation: "the city in which his ancestors lived"

to be registered for the census

"to have his name written in the register" or "to be included in the official count"

Luke 2:4

General Information:

The UDB rearranges verses 4 and 5 into a verse bridge in order to make it easier to shorten the sentences.

Joseph also

This introduces Joseph as a new participant in the story.

to the city of David, which is called Bethlehem

The phrase "the city of David" was a name for Bethlehem that tells why Bethlehem was important. Although it was a small town, King David was born there, and there was a prophecy that the Messiah would be born there. Alternate translation: "to Bethlehem, the city of King David" or "to Bethlehem, the town where King David was born"

because he was of the house and family line of David

"because Joseph was a descendant of David"

Luke 2:5

to register

This means to report to the officials there so they could include him in the count. Use a term for an official government count if possible.

along with Mary
Mary traveled with Joseph from Nazareth. It is likely that women were also taxed, so Mary would have needed to travel and be registered as well.

who was engaged to him
"his fiancée" or "who was promised to him." An engaged couple was considered legally married, but there would not have been physical intimacy between them.

Luke 2:6

General Information:
The UDB rearranges verses 6 and 7 into a verse bridge in order to keep together the details about the place they stayed.

Now it came about
This phrase marks the beginning of the next event in the story.

while they were there
"while Mary and Joseph were in Bethlehem"

the time came for her to deliver her baby
"it was time to give birth to her baby"

Luke 2:7

wrapped him in long strips of cloth
In some cultures mothers comfort their babies by wrapping them tightly in cloth or a blanket. Alternate translation: "wrapped cloths firmly around him" or "wrapped him tightly in a blanket"

laid him in a manger
This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. It was most likely clean and may have had something soft and dry like hay in it as a cushion for the baby. Animals were often kept near the home to keep them secure and to feed them easily. Mary and Joseph stayed in a room that was used for animals.

there was no room for them in the inn
"there was no space for them to stay in the guest room."
This was probably because so many people went to Bethlehem to register. Luke adds this as background information.

Luke 2:8

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 2:9

An angel of the Lord
"An angel from the Lord" or "An angel who served the Lord"

appeared to them
"came to the shepherds"

the glory of the Lord
The source of the bright light was the glory of the Lord, which appeared at the same time as the angel.

Luke 2:10

Do not be afraid
"Stop being afraid"

that will bring great joy to all the people
"that will make all the people very happy"

all the people
Some understand this to refer to the Jewish people. Others understand it to refer to all people.

Luke 2:11

the city of David
This refers to Bethlehem.

Luke 2:12

This is the sign that will be given to you
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will give you this sign" or "You will see this sign from God"

the sign
"the proof." This could either be a sign to prove that what the angel was saying was true, or it could be a sign that would help the shepherds recognize the baby.

wrapped in strips of cloth
This was the normal way that mothers protected and cared for their babies in that culture. See how you translated this in [Luke 2:7]

lying in a manger
This was some kind of box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.

Luke 2:13

a great multitude from heaven

These words could refer to a literal army of angels, or it could be a metaphor for an organized group of angels.

Alternate translation: "a large group of angels from heaven"

praising God

"giving praise to God"

Luke 2:14

Glory to God in the highest

Possible meanings are 1) "Give honor to God in the highest place" or 2) "Give the highest honor to God."

may there be peace on earth among people with whom he is pleased

"may those people on earth with whom God is pleased have peace"

Luke 2:15

It came about

This phrase is used to mark a shift in the story to what the shepherds did after the angels left.

from them

"from the shepherds"

to each other

"to one another"

Let us ... to us

Since the shepherds were speaking to one another, languages that have inclusive forms for "we" and "us" should use the inclusive form here.

Let us

"We should"

this thing that has happened

This refers to the birth of the baby, and not to the appearance of the angels.

Luke 2:16

lying in a manger

A manger is a box or frame that people put hay or other food in for animals to eat. See how you translated this in Luke 2:7.

Luke 2:17

what had been said to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the angels had told the shepherds"

this child

"the baby"

Luke 2:18

what was spoken to them by the shepherds

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what the shepherds told them"

Luke 2:19

treasuring them in her heart

A person who thinks something is very valuable or precious is "treasuring" it. Mary considered the things she was told about her son to be very precious.

Alternate translation: "carefully remembering them" or "joyfully remembering them"

Luke 2:20

shepherds returned

"shepherds went back to the sheep"

glorifying and praising God

These are very similar and emphasize how excited they were about what God had done. Alternate translation: "talking about and praising God's greatness"

Luke 2:21

General Information:

The laws God gave the Jewish believers told them when to circumcise a boy baby and what sacrifice the parents had to bring.

When it was the end of the eighth day

This phrase shows the passing of time before this new event.

the end of the eighth day

"the end of the eighth day of his life." The day he was born was counted as the first day.

he was named

Joseph and Mary gave him his name.

the name he had been given by the angel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the name the angel had called him"

Luke 2:22

When the required number ... had passed
This shows the passing of time before this new event.

the required number of days
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"the number of days that God required"

for their purification
"for them to become ceremonially clean." You can also
state God's role. Alternate translation: "for God to
consider them clean again"

they brought him up to the temple
"Mary and Joseph brought the baby up to the temple"

to present him to the Lord
"to bring him to the Lord" or "to bring him into the
Lord's presence." This was a ceremony acknowledging
God's claim on the firstborn children who were male.

Luke 2:23

As it is written
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"As Moses wrote" or "They did this because Moses
wrote"

Every male who opens the womb
This is an idiom meaning the first male born into a
family. This referred to both animals and people.
Alternate translation: "The first male that a mother
gives birth to" or "Every firstborn male"

Luke 2:24

what was said in the law of the Lord
"that which the law of the Lord also says." This is a
different place in the law. It refers to all males, whether
firstborn or not.

Luke 2:25

Behold
The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the
story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

was righteous and devout
These abstract terms can be expressed as actions.
Alternate translation: "did what was right and feared
God" or "obeyed God's laws and feared God"

consolation of Israel
The word "Israel" is a metonym for the people of Israel.
To "console" someone is to give them comfort, or

"consolation." The words "consolation of Israel" are a
metonym for the Christ or Messiah who would comfort
or bring consolation to the people of Israel. Alternate
translation: "the one who would comfort the people of
Israel"

the Holy Spirit was upon him
"the Holy Spirit was with him." God was with him in a
special way and gave him wisdom and direction in his
life.

Luke 2:26

It had been revealed to him by the Holy Spirit
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"The Holy Spirit had shown him" or "The Holy Spirit
had told him"

he would not see death before he had seen the Lord's Christ
"he would see the Lord's Messiah before he died"

Luke 2:27

Led by the Spirit
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"As the Holy Spirit directed him"

came
Some languages may say "went."

into the temple
"into the temple courtyard." Only priests could enter
the temple building.

the parents
"Jesus's parents"

the custom of the law
"the custom of the law of God"

Luke 2:28

he took him into his arms
"Simeon took the infant Jesus into his arms" or "Simeon
held Jesus in his arms"

Luke 2:29

Now let your servant depart in peace
"I am your servant; let me depart in peace." Simeon
was referring to himself.

depart
This is a euphemism meaning "die"

according to your word

"Word" here is a metonym for "promise." Alternate translation: "as you have promised"

Luke 2:30

my eyes have seen

This expression means, "I have personally seen" or "I, myself, have seen"

your salvation

This expression refers to the person who would bring salvation—the infant Jesus—whom Simeon was holding. Alternate translation: "the savior whom you sent" or "the one whom you sent to save"

Luke 2:31

which you

Depending on how you translate the previous phrase, this may need to be changed to "whom you."

have prepared

"have planned" or "caused to happen"

Luke 2:32

A light for revelation to the Gentiles

This metaphor means that the child will help people to understand God's will. The Gentiles understanding God's will is spoken of as if they were people using physical light to see a solid object. You may need to make explicit what it is that the Gentiles will see. Alternate translation: "This child will enable the Gentiles to understand God's will as light allows people to see clearly"

for revelation

It may be necessary to state what is to be revealed. Alternate translation: "that will reveal God's truth"

glory to your people Israel

"he will be the reason that glory will come to your people Israel"

Luke 2:33

what was said about him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that Simeon said about him"

Luke 2:34

said to Mary his mother

"said to the child's mother, Mary." Make sure it does not sound like Mary is the mother of Simeon.

Behold

Simeon used this expression to tell Mary that what he is about to say is extremely important to her.

this child is appointed for the downfall and rising up of many people in Israel

The words "downfall" and "rising up" express turning away from God and drawing closer to God. Alternate translation: "this child will cause many people in Israel to fall away from God or to rise closer to God"

Luke 2:35

a sword will pierce your own soul

This metaphor describes the deep sadness that Mary would feel. Alternate translation: "your sadness will be painful as though a sword pierced your soul"

the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's inner beings. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he may reveal the thoughts of many people" or "he may reveal what many people secretly think"

Luke 2:36

A prophetess named Anna was there

This introduces a new participant into the story.

Phanuel

This is a man's name.

She was advanced in her days

This is a euphemism that says that she was very old. See how you translated similar words in [Luk 2:7]

seven years

"7 years"

after her virginity

"after she married him"

Luke 2:37

a widow for eighty-four years

Possible meanings are 1) she had been a widow for 84 years or 2) she was a widow and was now 84 years old.

never left the temple

This is probably an exaggeration meaning that she spent so much time in the temple that it seemed as though she never left it. Alternate translation: "was always at the temple" or "was often at the temple"

with fastings and prayers
"by abstaining from food on many occasions and by offering many prayers"

Luke 2:38

came near to them
"approached them" or "went to Mary and Joseph"

the redemption of Jerusalem
Here the word "redemption" is used to refer to the person who would do it. Alternate translation: "the one who would redeem Jerusalem" or "the person who would bring God's blessings and favor back to Jerusalem"

Luke 2:39

Connecting Statement:
Mary, Joseph, and Jesus leave the town of Bethlehem and return to the city of Nazareth for his childhood.

they were required to do according to the law of the Lord
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the law of the Lord required them to do"

their own town of Nazareth
This phrase means they lived in Nazareth. Make sure it does not sound like they owned the town. Alternate translation: "the town of Nazareth, where they lived"

Luke 2:40

full of wisdom
"becoming wiser" or "learning what was wise"

the grace of God was upon him
"God blessed him" or "God was with him in a special way"

Luke 2:41

His parents went ... Festival of the Passover
This is background information.

His parents
"Jesus's parents"

Luke 2:42

they again went up
Jerusalem was higher than almost any other place in Israel, so it was normal for Israelites to speak of going up to Jerusalem.

at the customary time
"at the normal time" or "as they did every year"

the festival
The Festival of the Passover, which involved eating a ceremonial meal.

Luke 2:43

After they had stayed the full number of days for the feast
"When the entire time for celebrating the feast was over" or "After celebrating the feast for the required number of days"

Luke 2:44

They assumed
"They thought"

they traveled a day's journey
"they traveled one day" or "they went as far as people walk in one day"

Luke 2:45

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 2:46

It came about that
This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

in the temple
This refers to the courtyard around the temple. Only the priests were allowed in the temple. Alternate translation: "in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

in the middle of
This does not mean the exact center. Rather, it means "among" or "together with" or "surrounded by."

the teachers
"the religious teachers" or "those who taught people about God"

Luke 2:47

All who heard him were amazed
They could not understand how a twelve-year-old boy with no religious education could answer so well.

at his understanding

"at how much he understood" or "that he understood so much about God"

his answers

"at how well he answered them" or "that he answered their questions so well"

Luke 2:48

When they saw him

"When Mary and Joseph found Jesus"

why have you treated us this way?

This was an indirect rebuke because he had not gone with them on the way back home. This caused them to worry about him. Alternate translation: "you should not have done this to us!"

Look

This word is often used to show the beginning of a new or important event. It also can be used to show where the action begins. If your language has a phrase that is used in this way, consider whether it would be natural to use it here.

Luke 2:49

Why were you searching for me?

Jesus uses two questions to mildly rebuke his parents, and to begin to tell them that he had a purpose from his heavenly Father that they did not understand.

Alternate translation: "You did not need to be concerned about me."

Did you not know ... business?

Jesus uses this second question to try to say that his parents should have known about the purpose for which his Father sent him. Alternate translation: "You should have known ... business."

about my Father's business

Possible meanings are 1) Jesus meant these words literally, to indicate that he was doing the work that his Father had given him, or 2) these words are an idiom that indicate where Jesus was, "in my Father's house." Since the next verse says that his parents did not understand what he was telling them, it would be best not to explain it more.

my Father's business

At age 12, Jesus, the Son of God, understood that God was his real Father

Luke 2:50

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 2:51

he went back home with them

"Jesus went back home with Mary and Joseph"

was obedient to them

"obeyed them" or "was always obeying them"

treasured all these things in her heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's mind or inner being. Alternate translation: "carefully remembered all these things"

Luke 2:52

grow in wisdom and stature

"become wiser and stronger." These refer to mental and physical growth.

increased in favor with God and people

This refers to spiritual and social growth. These could be stated separately. Alternate translation: "God blessed him more and more, and people liked him more and more"

Chapter 3

Luke 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 3:4-6, which is from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Justice

John's instructions to the soldiers and tax collectors in this chapter are not complicated. They are things that should have been obvious to them. He instructed them to live justly. (See: justice and [Luke 3:12-15](#))

Genealogy

A genealogy is a list which records a person's ancestors or descendants. Such lists were very important in determining who had the right be king, because the king's authority was usually passed down or inherited from his father. It was also common for other important people to have a recorded genealogy.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Prophecy often involves the use of metaphors to express its meaning. Spiritual discernment is needed for proper interpretation of the prophecy. The prophecy of Isaiah is an extended metaphor describing the ministry of John the Baptist

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"(Herod) had John locked up in prison"

This event can cause confusion because the author says John was imprisoned and then says he was baptizing Jesus. The author probably uses this phrase in anticipation of Herod's imprisonment of John. This would mean that this statement is still in the future at the time of the narrative.

Luke 3:1

General Information:

Verses 1-3 give background information to tell what is happening when Jesus's cousin John begins his ministry.

Connecting Statement:

As the prophet Isaiah had foretold, John begins to preach good news to the people.

Philip ... Lysanias

These are the names of men.

Iturea and Trachonitis ... Abilene

These are names of territories.

Luke 3:2

during the high priesthood of Annas and Caiaphas
"while Annas and Caiaphas were serving together as the high priest." Annas was the high priest, and the Jews continued to recognize him as such even after the Romans appointed his son-in-law, Caiaphas, to replace him as high priest.

the word of God came

The writer speaks of God's message as though it were a person who moved toward those who heard it.
Alternate translation: "God spoke his message"

Luke 3:3

preaching a baptism of repentance

The terms "baptism" and "repentance" could be stated as actions. Alternate translation: "and he preached that people should be baptized to show that they were repenting"

for the forgiveness of sins

They would repent so that God would forgive their sins. The term "forgiveness" can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "so that their sins would be forgiven" or "so that God would forgive their sins"

Luke 3:4

General Information:

The author, Luke, quotes a passage from Isaiah the prophet concerning John the Baptist.

As it is written in the book of the words of Isaiah the prophet, These words introduce a quotation from the prophet Isaiah. They can be stated in active form, and the missing words can be supplied. Alternate translation: "This happened as Isaiah the prophet had written in the book that contains his words:" or "John fulfilled the message that the prophet Isaiah had written in his book:"

A voice of one crying out in the wilderness

This can be expressed as a sentence. Alternate translation: "The voice of one crying out in the wilderness is heard" or "They hear the sound of someone crying out in the wilderness"

Make ready the way of the Lord, make his paths straight
The second command explains or adds more detail to the first.

Make ready the way of the Lord

"Get the road ready for the Lord." Doing this represents preparing to hear the Lord's message when he comes. Alternate translation: "Prepare yourselves for the Lord to come" or "Be ready for the Lord when he comes"

the way

"the path" or "the road"

Luke 3:5

Every valley will be filled ... every mountain and hill will be made low

When people prepare the road for an important person who is coming, they cut down the high places and fill in the low places so that the road will be level. This is part of the metaphor started in the previous verse.

Every valley will be filled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They will fill in every low place in the road"

every mountain and hill will be made low

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will level every mountain and hill" or "they will remove every high place in the road"

Luke 3:6

see the salvation of God

This can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "learn how God saves people from sin"

Luke 3:7

to be baptized by him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for John to baptize them"

You offspring of vipers

This is a metaphor. Here "offspring of" means "having the characteristic of." Vipers are poisonous snakes that are dangerous and represent evil. Alternate translation: "You evil poisonous snakes" or "You are evil, like poisonous snakes"

Who warned you ... coming?

He was not really expecting them to answer. John was rebuking the people because they were asking him to baptize them so that God would not punish them, but they did not want to stop sinning. Alternate translation: "You cannot flee from God's wrath like this!" or "You cannot escape from God's wrath just by being baptized!"

from the wrath that is coming

The word "wrath" is used here to refer to God's punishment because his wrath precedes it. Alternate translation: "from the punishment that God is sending" or "from God's wrath on which he is about to act"

Luke 3:8

produce fruits that are worthy of repentance

In this metaphor, a person's behavior is compared to fruit. Just as a plant is expected to produce fruit that is appropriate for that kind of plant, a person who says that he has repented is expected to live righteously.

Alternate translation: "produce the kind of fruit that shows that you have repented" or "do the good things that show that you have turned away from your sin"

to say within yourselves

"saying to yourselves" or "thinking"

We have Abraham for our father

"Abraham is our ancestor" or "We are Abraham's descendants." If it is unclear why they would say this, you may also add the implied information: "so God will not punish us."

raise up children for Abraham

"create children for Abraham"

from these stones

John was probably referring to the actual stones along the Jordan River.

Luke 3:9

the ax is set against the root of the trees

The ax that is in position so it can cut the roots of a tree is a metaphor for the punishment that is about to begin. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God is like the man who has placed his ax against the root of the trees"

every tree ... is chopped down and thrown into the fire

"fire" here is a metaphor for punishment. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he chops down every tree ... and throws it into the fire"

Luke 3:10

asking him, saying

"asking him and said" or "asking John"

Luke 3:11

Connecting Statement:

John begins to respond to questions that people in the crowd ask him.

answered and said to them

"answered them, saying" or "answered them" or "said"

do the same

This refers back to giving to someone what he needs.

Alternate translation: "give food to someone who does not have any" or "share extra food just as you shared the extra tunic"

Luke 3:12

to be baptized

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for John to baptize them"

Luke 3:13

Do not collect more money

"Do not ask for more money" or "Do not demand more money." Tax collectors had been collecting more money than they should have been collecting. John tells them to stop doing that.

than you have been ordered to collect

This is passive to show that the tax collector's authority comes from Rome. Alternate translation: "than what the Romans have authorized you to take"

Luke 3:14

What about us? What must we do?

"How about us soldiers, what must we do?" John is not included in the words "us" and "we." The soldiers have implied that John had told the crowd and the tax collector what they must do and want to know what they as soldiers are to do.

do not accuse anyone falsely

It seems that the soldiers were making false charges against people in order to get money. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "in the same way, do not accuse anyone falsely in order to get money from them" or "do not say that an innocent person has done something illegal"

Be content with your wages

"Be satisfied with your pay"

Luke 3:15

as the people

"because the people." This refers to the same people who came to John.

everyone was wondering in their hearts concerning John, whether he might be the Christ.

"everyone was unsure what to think about John; they asked themselves, 'Could he be the Christ?'" or "no one

was sure what to think about John because they were wondering whether he might be the Christ."

Luke 3:16

John answered by saying to them all
John's answer about a greater person coming clearly implies that John is not the Christ. It may be helpful to state this clearly for your audience. Alternate translation: "John clarified that he was not the Christ by saying to them all"

I baptize you with water
"I baptize using water" or "I baptize by means of water"

not worthy even to untie the strap of his sandals
"not important enough even to loosen the straps of his sandals." Untying the straps of sandals was a duty of a slave. John was saying that the one who would come is so great that John was not even worthy enough to be his slave.

He will baptize you with the Holy Spirit and with fire
This metaphor compares literal baptism that brings a person into contact with water to a spiritual baptism that brings them into contact with the Holy Spirit and with fire.

fire
Here the word "fire" may refer to 1) judgment or 2) purification. It is preferred to leave it as "fire"

Luke 3:17

His winnowing fork is in his hand
"He is holding a winnowing fork because he is ready."
John speaks of the Christ coming to judge people as if he were a farmer who is ready to separate wheat grain from chaff. Alternate translation: "He is ready to judge people like a farmer who is ready"

winnowing fork
This is a tool for tossing wheat into the air to separate the wheat grain from the chaff. The heavier grain falls back down and the unwanted chaff is blown away by the wind. It is similar to a pitchfork.

to thoroughly clear off his threshing floor
The threshing floor was the place where wheat was stacked in preparation for threshing. To "clear off" the floor is to finish threshing the grain. Alternate translation: "to finish threshing his grain"

to gather the wheat
The wheat is the acceptable harvest that is kept and stored.

will burn up the chaff
The chaff is not useful for anything, so people burn it up.

Luke 3:18

With many other exhortations
"With many other strong urgings"

Luke 3:19

General Information:
Verses 19 and 20 tell what is going to happen to John but has not happened at this time.

Herod the tetrarch
Herod was a tetrarch, not a king. He had only limited rule over the region of Galilee.

When Herod the tetrarch had been reprovved
It is implied that John reprovved Herod. This can also be translated with an active form. Alternate translation: "When Herod the tetrarch had been reprovved by John" or "When John reprovved Herod the tetrarch")

for marrying his brother's wife Herodias
"because Herod married Herodias, his own brother's wife." This was evil because Herod's brother was still alive. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "because he married his brother's wife, Herodias, while his brother was still alive"

Luke 3:20

he locked John up in prison
Because Herod was tetrarch, he probably locked John up by ordering his soldiers to lock John up. Alternate translation: "he had his soldiers lock John up in prison" or "he told his soldiers to put John in prison"

Luke 3:21

General Information:
The previous verse says that Herod put John in prison. It might be helpful to make it clear that the account starting in verse 21 happened before John was arrested. The UDB does this by starting verse 21 with "But before John was put in prison."

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins his ministry with his baptism.

Now it came about
This phrase marks the beginning of a new event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

when all the people were baptized
"while John baptized all the people." The phrase "all the people" refers to the people present with John.

Jesus also was baptized
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"John baptized Jesus also"

the heavens opened
"the sky opened" or "the sky became open." This is more than a simple clearing of clouds, but it's not clear what it means. It possibly means that a hole appeared in the sky.

Luke 3:22

the Holy Spirit in bodily form came down on him like a dove
"in physical form the Holy Spirit came down like a dove onto Jesus"

a voice came from heaven
Here "a voice came from heaven" represents people on earth hearing God in heaven speaking. It can be made clear that God spoke to Jesus. Alternate translation: "a voice from heaven said" or "God spoke to Jesus from heaven, saying"

my beloved Son
This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

Luke 3:23

General Information:
Luke lists the ancestors of Jesus through the line of his supposed father, Joseph.

When
This word is used here to mark a change from the story to background information about Jesus's age and ancestors.

thirty years of age
"30 years old"

He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph
"It was thought that he was the son of Joseph" or
"People assumed that he was the son of Joseph"

Luke 3:24

the son of Matthat, the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph
This continues the list that begins with the words "He was the son ... of Joseph, the son of Heli" in verse 24. Consider how people normally list ancestors in your language. You should use the same wording throughout

the whole list. Possible formats are 1) "He was the son ... of Joseph, the son of Heli, who was the son of Matthat, who was the son of Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of Jannai, the son of Joseph" or 2) "He was the son ... of Joseph. Joseph was the son of Heli. Heli was the son of Matthat. Matthat was the son of Levi. Levi was the son of Melchi. Melchi was the son of Jannai. Jannai was the son of Joseph" or 3) "His father ... was Joseph. Joseph's father was Heli. Heli's father was Matthat. Matthat's father was Levi. Levi's father was Melchi. Melchi's father was Jannai. Jannai's father was Joseph"

Luke 3:25

the son of Mattathias, the son of Amos ... Naggai
This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:26

the son of Maath ... Joda
This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:27

Joda was the son of Joanan, the son of Rhesa ... Neri
This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that begins in [Luke 3:23]

the son of Salathiel
The name Salathiel may be a different spelling of the name Shealtiel (as some versions have it), but identification is difficult.

Luke 3:28

the son of Melchi ... Er
This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:29

the son of Joshua, the son of Eliezer ... Levi
This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:30

the son of Simeon, the son of Judah ... Eliakim
This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:31

the son of Melea ... David

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:32

the son of Jesse ... the son of Nahshon

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:33

the son of Amminadab, the son of Admin ... Judah

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:34

the son of Jacob ... Nahor

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:35

the son of Serug ... Shelah

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:36

the son of Cainan, the son of Arphaxad ... Lamech

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:37

the son of Methuselah ... Cainan

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Luke 3:38

the son of Enos ... Adam

This is a continuation of the list of Jesus's ancestors that began in [Luke 3:23]

Adam, the son of God

"Adam, created by God" or "Adam, who was from God"
or "Adam, the son, we could say, of God"

Chapter 4

Luke 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 4:10-11, 18-19, which is from the Old Testament.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Jesus was tempted by the devil

While it is true that the devil sincerely believed that he could persuade Jesus to obey him, it is important not to imply that Jesus actually ever really wanted to obey him.

Luke 4:1

Then Jesus
After John had baptized Jesus.

was led by the Spirit
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"the Spirit led him"

Luke 4:2

Connecting Statement:
Jesus fasts for 40 days, and the devil meets him to try to persuade him to sin.

for forty days he was tempted
Most versions say that the temptation was throughout the forty days. The UDB states "While he was there, the devil kept tempting him" to make this clear.

forty days
"40 days"

he was tempted by the devil
This can be stated in active form, and you can make explicit what it was the devil tempted him to do.
Alternate translation: "the devil tried to persuade him to disobey God"

He ate nothing
The word "he" refers to Jesus.

Luke 4:3

If you are the Son of God
The devil challenges Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

this stone
The devil either holds a stone in his hand or points to a nearby stone.

Luke 4:4

Jesus answered him, "It is written ... alone."
Jesus's rejection of the devil's challenge is clearly implied in his answer. It may be helpful to state this clearly for your audience, as the UDB does. Alternate translation: "Jesus replied, 'No, I will not do that because it is written ... alone.'"

It is written
The quotation is from Moses's writings in the Old Testament. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has written in the scriptures"

Man does not live on bread alone
The word "bread" refers to food in general. Food as compared to God, by itself, is not enough to sustain a person. Jesus quotes the scripture to say why he would not turn the stone into bread. Alternate translation: "People cannot live on just bread" or "It is not just food that makes a person live" or "God says there are more important things than food"

Luke 4:5

Then the devil led Jesus up ... world
"Then the devil led Jesus up to a very high place ... world." It is uncertain where the devil led Jesus and how he showed all the kingdoms of the world to him.

in an instant of time
"in an instant" or "instantly"

Luke 4:6

they have been given to me
This can be stated in active form. Possible meanings are that "them" refers to 1) the authority and splendor of the kingdoms or 2) the kingdoms. Alternate translation: "God has given them to me"

Luke 4:7

if you will bow down ... worship me
These two phrases are very similar. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "if you will bow down in worship to me"

it will be yours
"I will give you all these kingdoms, with their splendor"

Luke 4:8

It is written
Jesus refused to do what the devil asked. It may be helpful to state this clearly. Alternate translation: "No, I will not worship you, because it is written"

answered and said to him
"responded to him" or "replied to him"

It is written
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has written in the scriptures"

You will worship the Lord your God
Jesus was quoting a command from the scriptures to say why he would not worship the devil.

You
This refers to the people in the Old Testament who received God's Law. You could use the singular form of 'you' because each person was to obey it, or you could use the plural form of 'you' because all of the people were to obey it.

him
The word "him" refers to the Lord God.

Luke 4:9

the very highest point
This was the corner of the temple roof. If someone fell from there, they would be seriously injured or die.

If you are the Son of God
The devil is challenging Jesus to prove that he is the Son of God.

Son of God
This is an important title for Jesus.

throw yourself down
"jump down to the ground"

Luke 4:10

For it is written
The devil implies that his quote from the Psalms means Jesus will not be hurt if he is the Son of God. This can be stated clearly, as the UDB does. Alternate translation: "You will not be hurt, because it is written"

it is written
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the writer has written"

He will give orders
"He" refers to God. The devil partially quoted from the Psalms in an effort to persuade Jesus to jump off the building.

Luke 4:11

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 4:12

It is said
Jesus tells the devil why he will not do what the devil told him to do. His refusal to do it can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "No, I will not do that, because it is said"

It is said
Jesus quotes from the writings of Moses in Deuteronomy. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses has said" or "Moses has said in the scriptures"

Do not put the Lord your God to the test
Possible meanings are 1) Jesus should not test God by jumping off the temple, or 2) the devil should not test Jesus to see if he is the Son of God. It is best to translate

the verse as stated rather than to try to explain the meaning.

Luke 4:13

until another time
"until another occasion"

had finished tempting Jesus
This does not imply that the devil was successful in his temptation—Jesus resisted every attempt. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "had finished trying to persuade Jesus to sin"

Luke 4:14

Connecting Statement:
Jesus returns to Galilee, teaches in the synagogue (4:15), and tells the people there that he is fulfilling scripture of Isaiah the prophet (4:17-21).

Then Jesus returned
This begins a new event in the story.

in the power of the Spirit
"and the Spirit was giving him power." God was with Jesus in a special way, enabling him to do things that humans usually could not.

news about him spread
"people spread the news about Jesus" or "people told other people about Jesus" or "knowledge about him was passed on from person to person." Those who heard Jesus told other people about him, and then those other people told even more people about him.

throughout the entire surrounding region
This refers to the areas or places around Galilee.

Luke 4:15

he was praised by all
"everyone said great things about him" or "all the people spoke about him in a good way"

Luke 4:16

where he had been raised
"where his parents had raised him" or "where he lived when he was a child" or "where he grew up"

as was his custom
"as he did each Sabbath." It was his usual practice to go to the synagogue on the Sabbath day.

Luke 4:17

The scroll of the prophet Isaiah was handed to him
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone gave him the scroll of the prophet Isaiah"

scroll of the prophet Isaiah
This refers to the book of Isaiah written on a scroll. Isaiah had written the words many years before, and someone else had copied them onto a scroll.

the place where it was written
"the place in the scroll with these words." This sentence continues on into the next verse.

Luke 4:18

The Spirit of the Lord is upon me
"The Holy Spirit is with me in a special way." When someone says this, he is claiming to speak the words of God.

he anointed me
In the Old Testament, ceremonial oil was poured on a person when they were given power and authority to do a special task. Jesus uses this metaphor to refer to the Holy Spirit being on him to prepare him for this work. Alternate translation: "the Holy Spirit is upon me to empower me" or "the Holy Spirit gave me power and authority"

the poor
"the poor people"

proclaim freedom to the captives
"tell people who are being held captive that they can go free" or "set free the prisoners of war"

recovery of sight to the blind
"give sight to the blind" or "make the blind be able to see again"

set free those who are oppressed
"set free those who are treated harshly"

Luke 4:19

to proclaim the year of the Lord's favor
"tell everyone that the Lord is ready to bless his people" or "announce that this is the year that the Lord will show his kindness"

Luke 4:20

rolled up the scroll

A scroll was closed by rolling it like a tube to protect the writing inside it.

attendant

This refers to a synagogue worker who brought out and put away with proper care and reverence the scrolls containing the scriptures.

sat down

It was customary for teachers to be seated while teaching.

were fixed on him

This idiom means "were focused on him" or "were looking intently at him"

Luke 4:21

this scripture has been fulfilled in your hearing

Jesus was saying that he was fulfilling that prophecy by his actions and speech at that very time. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I am fulfilling what this scripture says right now as you are listening to me"

in your hearing

This idiom means "while you are listening to me"

Luke 4:22

amazed at the gracious words which were coming out of his mouth
"surprised about the gracious things that he was saying." Here "gracious" may refer to 1) how well or how persuasively Jesus spoke, or 2) that Jesus spoke words about God's grace.

Is this not the son of Joseph?

People thought that Joseph was Jesus's father. Joseph was not a religious leader, so they were surprised that his son would preach what he did. Alternate translation: "This is just Joseph's son!" or "His father is only Joseph!"

Luke 4:23

Surely

"Certainly" or "There is no doubt that"

Doctor, heal yourself

If someone claims to be able to heal diseases that he himself has, there is no reason to believe he is really a doctor. People will speak this proverb to Jesus to say that they will only believe he is a prophet if they see

him do what they have heard that he did in other places.

Whatever we heard ... do the same in your hometown

The people of Nazareth do not believe Jesus is a prophet because of his low status as Joseph's son. They will not believe unless they personally see him do miracles.

Luke 4:24

Truly I say to you

"It is certainly true." This is an emphatic statement about what follows.

no prophet is received in his own hometown

Jesus makes this general statement in order to rebuke the people. He means that they are refusing to believe the reports of his miracles in Capernaum. They think they already know all about him.

own hometown

"homeland" or "native city" or "country where he grew up"

Luke 4:25

General Information:

Jesus reminds the people who are listening to him in the synagogue about Elijah and Elisha

But in truth I tell you

"I tell you truthfully." Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance, truth, and accuracy of the statement that follows.

widows

Widows are women whose husbands have died and who have not married again.

during the time of Elijah

The people to whom Jesus was speaking would have known that Elijah was one of God's prophets. If your readers would not know that, you can make this implicit information explicit as in the UDB. Alternate translation: "when Elijah was prophesying in Israel"

when the sky was shut up

This is a metaphor. The sky is pictured as a ceiling that was closed, and so no rain would fall from it. Alternate translation: "when no rain fell down from the sky" or "when there was no rain at all"

a great famine

"a serious lack of food." A famine occurs when the crops do not produce enough food for the people for a long period of time.

Luke 4:26

to Zarephath in Sidon, to a widow living there
The people living in the town of Zarephath were Gentiles, not Jews. The people listening to Jesus would have understood that the people of Zarephath were Gentiles. Alternate translation: "to a Gentile widow living in Zarephath in Sidon"

Luke 4:27

none of them were cleansed except Naaman the Syrian
This double negative emphasizes that Naaman was the only one who was cleansed. This can also be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "the only one of them who was cleansed was Naaman" or "the only one of them whom God cleansed was Naaman"

were cleansed
People who had leprosy were considered to be unclean. When they were healed from leprosy, they were clean. Alternate translation: "were healed"

Naaman the Syrian
A Syrian is a person from the country of Syria. The people of Syria were Gentiles, not Jews. Alternate translation: "the Gentile Naaman from Syria"

Luke 4:28

All the people in the synagogue were filled with rage when they heard these things
The people of Nazareth were deeply offended that Jesus had cited scriptures where God had helped Gentiles instead of Jews.

Luke 4:29

forced him out of the town
"forced him to leave the town" or "shoved him out of the city"

cliff of the hill
"edge of the cliff"

Luke 4:30

through the middle of them
"through the middle of the crowd" or "between the people who were trying to kill him."

he went to another place
"he went away" or "he went on his way" Jesus went where he had planned to go instead of where the people were trying to force him to go.

Luke 4:31

Connecting Statement:
Jesus then goes to Capernaum, teaches the people in the synagogue there, and commands a demon to leave a man (4:35).

Then he
"Then Jesus." This indicates a new event.

went down to Capernaum
The phrase "went down" is used here because Capernaum is lower in elevation than Nazareth.

Capernaum, a city in Galilee
"Capernaum, another city in Galilee"

Luke 4:32

astonished
greatly surprised, greatly amazed

he spoke with authority
"he spoke as one with authority" or "his words had great power"

Luke 4:33

Now ... there was a man
This phrase is used to mark the introduction of a new character into the story; in this case, a demon-possessed man.

who had the spirit of an unclean demon
"who was possessed by an unclean demon" or "who was controlled by an evil spirit"

he cried out with a loud voice
"he shouted loudly"

Luke 4:34

What do we have to do with you
This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "What do we have in common" or "What right do you have to bother us"

What do we have to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth?
This question could be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "What do you, Jesus of Nazareth, have to do with us!" or "We have nothing to do with you, Jesus of Nazareth!" or "You have no right to bother us, Jesus of Nazareth!"

Luke 4:35

Jesus rebuked the demon, saying
"Jesus scolded the demon, saying" or "Jesus sternly said to the demon"

Come out of him
He commanded the demon to stop controlling the man.
Alternate translation: "Leave him alone" or "Do not live in this man any longer"

Luke 4:36

What kind of words are these?
The people were expressing how amazed they were that Jesus had the authority to command demons to leave a person. This can be written as a statement.
Alternate translation: "These are amazing words!" or "His words are amazing!"

He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power
"He has authority and power to command the unclean spirits"

Luke 4:37

So news about him began to spread ... the surrounding region
This is a comment about what happened after the story.
The spread of the news was caused by the events within the story itself.

news about him began to spread
"reports about Jesus began to spread" or "people began to spread the news about Jesus"

Luke 4:38

Connecting Statement:
Jesus is still in Capernaum, but he is now at the house of Simon.

Then Jesus left
This introduces a new event.

Simon's mother-in-law
"the mother of Simon's wife"

was suffering with
This is an idiom that means "was very sick with"

a high fever
"very hot skin"

pleaded with him on her behalf
This means they asked Jesus to heal her from the fever.
This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "asked

Jesus to heal her from the fever" or "asked Jesus to cure her fever"

Luke 4:39

So he stood
The word "So" makes it clear that he did this because the people pleaded with him on behalf of Simon's mother-in-law.

stood over her
"went to her and leaned over her"

rebuked the fever, and it left her
"spoke sternly to the fever, and it left her" or "commanded the fever to leave her, and it did." It may be helpful to state clearly what he told the fever to do.
Alternate translation: "commanded that her skin should become cool, and it did" or "commanded the sickness to leave her, and it did"

rebuked the fever
"rebuked the hotness"

started serving them
Here this means she began to prepare food for Jesus and the other people in the house.

Luke 4:40

laid his hands on
"placed his hands on" or "touched"

Luke 4:41

Demons also came out
It is implied that Jesus made the demons leave the demon-possessed people. This can be stated clearly.
Alternate translation: "Jesus also forced demons to come out"

crying out and saying
These mean about the same thing, and probably refer to cries of fear or anger. Some translations use only one term. Alternate translation: "screaming" or "shouting"

Son of God
This is an important title for Jesus.

rebuked the demons
"spoke sternly to the demons"

would not let them
"did not allow them to"

Luke 4:42

Connecting Statement:

Though the people want Jesus to stay in Capernaum, he goes to preach in other Judean synagogues.

When daybreak came

"At sunrise" or "At dawn"

a solitary place

"a deserted place" or "a place where there were no people"

Luke 4:43

to many other cities

"to the people in many other cities"

this is the reason I was sent here

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"this is the reason God sent me here"

Luke 4:44

throughout Judea

Since Jesus had been in Galilee, the term "Judea" here probably refers to the entire region where the Jews lived at that time. Alternate translation: "where the Jews lived"

Chapter 5

Luke 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

"You will catch men"

Peter, James, and John were fishermen. When Jesus told them that they would catch men, he was using a metaphor to tell them he wanted them to help people believe the good news about him.

Sinners

When the people of Jesus's time spoke of "sinners," they were talking about people who did not obey the law of Moses and instead committed sins like stealing or sexual sins. When Jesus said that he came to call "sinners," he meant that only people who believe that they are sinners can be his followers. This is true even if they are not what most people think of as "sinners." (See: sin)

Fasting and Feasting

People would fast, or not eat food for a long time, when they were sad or were showing God that they were sorry for their sins. When they were happy, like during weddings, they would have feasts, or meals where they would eat much food. (See: fast)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Irony

Jesus uses irony to condemn the Pharisees. This passage includes "people in good health" and "righteous people." This does not mean that there are people who do not need Jesus. There are no "righteous people." Everybody needs Jesus. (See: and [Luke 5:31-32](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Implicit information

In several parts of this chapter the author left out some implicit information that his original readers would have understood and thought about. Modern readers might not know some of those things, so they might have trouble understanding all that the author was communicating. The UDB often shows how that information can be presented so that modern readers will be able to understand those passages.

Past Events

Parts of this chapter are sequences of events that have already happened. In a given passage, Luke sometimes writes as if the events have already happened while other events are still in progress (even though they are complete at the time he writes). This can cause difficulty in translation by creating an illogical order of events. It may be necessary to make these consistent by writing as if all the events have already happened.

"Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

Luke 5:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus preaches from Simon Peter's boat at the lake of Gennesaret.

Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

listening to the word of God

Possible meanings are 1) "listening to the message God wanted them to hear" or 2) "listening to Jesus's message about God"

the lake of Gennesaret

These words refer to the Sea of Galilee. Galilee was on the west side of the lake, and the land of Gennesaret was on the east side, so it was called by both names. Some English versions translate this as the proper name of the body of water, "the Lake of Gennesaret."

Luke 5:2

washing their nets

They were cleaning their fishing nets in order to use them again to catch fish.

Luke 5:3

one of the boats, which was Simon's, and
"the boat belonging to Simon and"

asked him to put it out in the water
"asked Simon to move the boat"

he sat down and taught the people

Sitting was the normal position for a teacher.

taught the people out of the boat

"taught the people while he sat in the boat." Jesus was in the boat a short distance from the shore and he was speaking to the people who were on the shore.

Luke 5:4

When he had finished speaking

"When Jesus had finished teaching the people"

Luke 5:5

at your word

"because you have told me to do this"

Luke 5:6

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 5:7

motioned

They were too far from shore to call, so they made gestures, probably by waving their arms.

they began to sink

"the boats began to sink." The reason could be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the boats began to sink because the catch of fish was so heavy" or "the boats began to sink because there were so many fish"

Luke 5:8

fell down at Jesus' knees

Possible meanings are 1) "knelt down before Jesus" or 2) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 3) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Peter did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

sinful man

The word here for "man" means "adult male" and not the more general "human being."

Luke 5:9

the catch of fish

"the large number of fish"

Luke 5:10

partners with Simon

"Simon's partners in his fishing business"

you will catch men

The image of catching fish is being used as a metaphor for gathering people to follow Christ. Alternate translation: "you will fish for people" or "you will gather people for me" or "you will bring people to be my disciples"

Luke 5:11

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 5:12

Connecting Statement:

Jesus heals a leper in a different city that is not named.

It came about
This phrase marks a new event in the story.

a man full of leprosy
"a man who was covered with leprosy." This introduces a new character in the story.

he fell on his face
Here "fell on his face" is an idiom that means to bow down. Alternate translation: "he knelt and touched the ground with his face" or "he bowed down to the ground"

if you are willing
"if you want to"

you can make me clean
It is understood that he was asking Jesus to heal him. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "please make me clean, because you are able"

make me clean
This refers to ceremonial cleanness, but it is understood that he is unclean because of the leprosy. He is really asking Jesus to heal him of his disease. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "heal me from leprosy so I will be clean"

Luke 5:13

Be clean
This refers to ceremonial cleanness, but it is understood that he is unclean because of the leprosy. He is really asking Jesus to heal him of his disease. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Be healed"

the leprosy left him
"he no longer had leprosy"

Luke 5:14

He instructed him to tell no one but told him, "Go on your way
Jesus's instruction can be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "He said, 'Do not tell anyone, but go on your way'"

to tell no one
The understood information can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "to not tell anyone that he had been healed"

sacrifice for your cleansing
The law required a person to make a specific sacrifice after they were healed. This allowed the person to be ceremonially clean, and able to again participate in religious rituals.

for a testimony
"as proof of your healing"

to them
Possible meanings are 1) "to the priests" or 2) "to all the people."

Luke 5:15

the report about him
"the news about Jesus." This could mean either "the report about Jesus's healing the man with leprosy" or "the report about Jesus's healing people."

the report about him spread even farther
"the report about him went out even farther." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people kept telling the news about him in other places"

Luke 5:16

the deserted places
"lonely places" or "places where there were no other people"

Luke 5:17

Connecting Statement:
One day when Jesus was teaching in a building, some men brought a paralyzed man for Jesus to heal.

It came about
This phrase marks the beginning of a new part of the story.

Luke 5:18

Now some men came
These are new people in the story. Your language may have a way of showing that these are new people.

mat
sleeping pad or bed or stretcher

was paralyzed
"could not move himself"

Luke 5:19

They could not find a way to bring him in because of the crowd, so
In some languages it might be more natural to reorder this. Alternate translation: "But because of the crowd of people, they could not find a way to bring the man inside. So"

because of the crowd

It is clear that the reason they could not enter was that the crowd was so large that there was no room for them.

they went up to the housetop

Houses had flat roofs, and some houses had a ladder or staircase outside to make it easy to go up there. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "they went up to the flat roof of the house"

right in front of Jesus

"directly in front of Jesus" or "immediately in front of Jesus"

Luke 5:20

Seeing their faith, Jesus said

It is understood that they believe Jesus can heal the paralyzed man. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "When Jesus perceived that they believed that he could heal the man, he said to him"

Man

This is a general word that people used when speaking to a man whose name they did not know. It was not rude, but it also did not show special respect. Some languages might use a word like "friend" or "sir."

your sins are forgiven you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you are forgiven" or "I forgive your sins"

Luke 5:21

question this

"discuss this" or "reason about this." What they questioned can be stated. Alternate translation: "discuss whether or not Jesus had authority to forgive sins"

Who is this who speaks blasphemies?

This question shows how shocked and angry they were at what Jesus said. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This man is blaspheming God!" or "He blasphemes God by saying that!"

Who can forgive sins but God alone?

The implied information is that if a person claims to forgive sins he says he is God. This can be written as a clear statement. Alternate translation: "No one can forgive sins but God alone!" or "God is the only one who can forgive sins!"

Luke 5:22

Why are you questioning this in your hearts?

This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not argue about this in your hearts." or "You should not doubt that I have the authority to forgive sins."

in your hearts

Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings.

Luke 5:23

Which is easier: to say, 'Your sins are forgiven you' or to say, 'Get up and walk'?

Jesus uses this question to make the scribes think about what might prove whether or not he could really forgive sins. Alternate translation: "You may think that it is easier to say 'Your sins are forgiven' than it is to say 'Get up and walk.'"

easier to say

The unspoken implication is that one thing is easier to say because no one will know what has happened, but the other thing is harder to say because everyone will know what has happened. People could not see if the man's sins were forgiven, but they would all know he was healed if he got up and walked.

Luke 5:24

you may know

Jesus was speaking to the scribes and Pharisees. The word "you" is plural.

the Son of Man

Jesus was referring to himself.

I tell you

Jesus was saying this to the paralyzed man. The word "you" is singular.

Luke 5:25

Immediately he got up

"At once he got up" or "Right away he got up"

he got up

It may be helpful to clearly say that he was healed. Alternate translation: "the man was healed! He got up"

Luke 5:26

filled with fear

"very afraid" or "filled with awe"

extraordinary things
"amazing things" or "strange things"

Luke 5:27

Connecting Statement:
When Jesus leaves the house, he calls Levi, the Jewish tax collector, to follow him.

After these things happened
The phrase "these things" refers to what happened in the previous verses. This signals a new event.

saw a tax collector
"looked at a tax collector with attention" or "looked carefully at a tax collector"

Follow me
To "follow" someone is to become that person's disciple.
Alternate translation: "Be my disciple" or "Come, follow me as your teacher"

Luke 5:28

followed him, leaving everything behind
"followed him and left his work as a tax collector"

Luke 5:29

in his house
"in Levi's house"

reclining at the table
It was customary to lie on a couch while eating at a feast and to prop oneself up with the left arm on some pillows. Alternate translation: "eating together" or "eating at the table"

Luke 5:30

to his disciples
"to Jesus's disciples"

Why do you eat ... sinners?
The Pharisees and scribes ask this question to express their disapproval that Jesus's disciples are eating with sinners. Alternate translation: "You should not eat ... sinners!"

sinners
people who did not obey the law of Moses but committed what others thought were very bad sins

you eat and drink with ... sinners
The Pharisees and scribes believed that religious people should separate themselves from people they consider to be sinners. The word "you" is plural.

Luke 5:31

Connecting Statement:
At the meal, Jesus speaks with the Pharisees and scribes.

People who are well ... sick
Jesus uses this proverb to begin to tell them that he calls sinners to repentance the way a physician calls sick people to be healed.

physician
"doctor"

only those who are sick
You may need to supply the words that have been omitted. Alternate translation: "only those who are sick need a physician"

Luke 5:32

I did not come to call the righteous, but sinners to repentance
Jesus uses irony to condemn the Pharisees because they think of themselves as righteous. Anyone who wants to follow Jesus has to think of himself as a sinner, not as righteous. Jesus does not mean that he thinks there are righteous people who do not need to repent.

the righteous
This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "righteous people"

Luke 5:33

They said to him
"The religious leaders said to Jesus"

Luke 5:34

Can anyone make the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast while the bridegroom is still with them?
Jesus uses this question to cause the people to think about a situation that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one tells the wedding attendants of the bridegroom to fast while he is still with them."

wedding attendants
"guests" or "friends." These are friends who celebrate with a man who is getting married.

the wedding attendants of the bridegroom fast
Fasting is a sign of sadness. The religious leaders understood that the wedding attendants would not fast while the bridegroom was with them.

Luke 5:35

the days will come when
"soon" or "some day"

the bridegroom will be taken away from them
Jesus is comparing himself to the bridegroom, and the disciples to the wedding attendants. He does not explain the metaphor, so the translation should explain it only if necessary.

Luke 5:36

General Information:
Jesus tells a story to the scribes and pharisees who were at Levi's house.

No one tears ... uses it ... he ... he
"No one rips ... uses it ... he ... he" or "People never tear ... use it ... they ... they"

mend
repair

will not fit with
"will not match" or "will not be the same as"

Luke 5:37

new wine
"grape juice." This refers to wine that has not yet fermented.

wineskins
These were bags made out of animal skins. They could also be called "wine bags" or "bags made of skin."

the new wine will burst the skins
When the new wine would ferment and expand, it would break the old skins because they could no longer stretch out. Jesus's audience would have understood how wine expands when it ferments.

the wine will be spilled
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the wine will spill out of the bags"

Luke 5:38

fresh wineskins
"new wineskins" or "new wine bags." This refers to new wineskins, unused.

Luke 5:39

drinking old wine ... wants the new
This metaphor contrasts the old teaching of the religious leaders against the new teaching of Jesus. The point is that people who are used to the old teaching are not willing to listen to the new things that Jesus is teaching.

for he says, 'The old is better.'
It may be helpful to add the implicit information. Alternate translation: "for he says, 'The old is better,' and he is therefore not willing to try the new wine."

Chapter 6

Luke 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Luke 6:20-49 contains many blessings and woes that appear to correspond to Matthew 5-7. This part of Matthew has traditionally been called the "Sermon on the Mount." In Luke, they are not as connected to a teaching on the kingdom of God as they are in Matthew's gospel. (See: [kingdomofgod](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

"Eating the grain"

When the disciples plucked and ate the grain in a field they were walking through on the Sabbath ([Luke 6:1](#)), the Pharisees said that they were breaking the law of Moses. The Pharisees said that the disciples were doing work by picking the grain and so disobeying God's command to rest and not work on the Sabbath.

The Pharisees did not think the disciples were stealing. That is because the law of Moses required farmers to allow travelers to pluck and eat small amounts of grain from plants in fields they traveled through or near. (See: [lawofmoses](#) and [works and sabbath](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Metaphor

Metaphors are pictures of visible objects that speakers use to explain invisible truths. Jesus used a metaphor of a generous grain merchant to teach his people to be generous

Rhetorical Questions

Rhetorical questions are questions to which the speaker already knows the answer. The Pharisees scolded Jesus by asking him a rhetorical question when they thought he was breaking the Sabbath

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Implicit information

Speakers usually do not say things that they think their hearers already understand. When Luke wrote that the disciples were rubbing the heads of grain between their hands, he expected his reader to know that they were separating the part they would eat from what they would throw away

The twelve disciples

The following are the lists of the twelve disciples:

In Matthew:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James son of Zebedee, John son of Zebedee, Philip, Bartholomew, Thomas, Matthew, James son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot and Judas Iscariot.

In Mark:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James the son of Zebedee and John the son of Zebedee (to whom he gave the name Boanerges, that is, sons of thunder), Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Thaddaeus, Simon the Zealot, and Judas Iscariot.

In Luke:

Simon (Peter), Andrew, James, John, Philip, Bartholomew, Matthew, Thomas, James the son of Alphaeus, Simon (who was called the Zealot), Judas the son of James, and Judas Iscariot.

Thaddaeus is probably the same person as Jude, the son of James.

Luke 6:1

Connecting Statement:

While Jesus and his disciples are walking through grainfields, some Pharisees begin to question the disciples about what they are doing on the Sabbath, which, in God's law, has been set aside for God.

Now it happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you can consider using it here.

grainfields

These are large sections of land where people had scattered wheat seed to grow wheat.

heads of grain

These are the topmost parts of the grain plant, which is a kind of large grass. It holds the mature, edible seeds of the plant.

grain, rubbing them between their hands, and eating
They did this to separate the grain seeds. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "grain. They rubbed them in their hands to separate the grains from the husks and ate"

Luke 6:2

General Information:

The word "you" here is plural, and refers to the disciples.

Why are you doing something that is not lawful to do on the Sabbath day?

They asked this question to accuse the disciples of breaking the law. It can be written as a statement.
Alternate translation: "Picking grain on the Sabbath is against God's law!"

doing something

The Pharisees considered even the small action of rubbing a handful of grain to be unlawful work. This

can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "doing work"

Luke 6:3

Have you not even read ... him?

Jesus is rebuking the Pharisees for not learning from the scriptures. This can be written as a statement.

Alternate translation: "You should learn from what you have read ... him!" or "Certainly you have read ... him!"

Luke 6:4

the bread of the presence

This is the sacred bread that priests placed before God in the tabernacle. It represented God's presence.

Alternate translation: "the bread of Yahweh's presence" or "the bread that the priest placed before God" or "the sacred bread"

Luke 6:5

The Son of Man is

Jesus was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, am"

is Lord of the Sabbath

The title "Lord" here emphasizes his authority over the Sabbath. Alternate translation: "has the authority to determine what is right for people to do on the Sabbath!"

Luke 6:6

General Information:

It is now another Sabbath day and Jesus is in the synagogue.

Connecting Statement:

The scribes and Pharisees watch as Jesus heals a man on the Sabbath.

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event in the story.

A man was there
This introduces a new character in the story.

hand was withered
The man's hand was damaged in such a way that he could not stretch it. It was probably almost bent into a fist, making it look small and wrinkled.

Luke 6:7

were watching him closely
"were watching Jesus carefully"

so that they might find
"because they wanted to find"

Luke 6:8

in the middle of everyone
"in front of everyone." Jesus wanted the man to stand where everyone there could see him.

Luke 6:9

to them
"to the Pharisees"

I ask you, is it lawful on the Sabbath to do good or to do harm, to save a life or to destroy it?
Jesus asks this question to force the Pharisees to admit that he was right to heal on the Sabbath. The intent of the question is thus rhetorical: to get them to admit what they all know is true rather than to obtain information. However, Jesus says, "I ask you," so this question is not like other rhetorical questions that might need to be translated as statements. This should be translated as a question.

to do good or to do harm
"to help someone or to harm someone"

Luke 6:10

Stretch out your hand
"Hold out your hand" or "Extend your hand"

restored
healed

Luke 6:11

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 6:12

General Information:
Jesus chooses twelve apostles after he prays all night.

It happened in those days
This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

in those days
"around that time" or "not long after" or "one day around then"

he went out
"Jesus went out"

Luke 6:13

When it was day
"When it was morning" or "The next day"

he chose twelve of them
"he chose twelve of the disciples"

whom he also named apostles
"whom he also made apostles" or "and he appointed them to be apostles"

Luke 6:14

The names of the apostles were
Luke wrote a list of the names of the apostles. The ULB uses these words to introduce the list.

his brother Andrew
"Simon's brother, Andrew"

Luke 6:15

the Zealot
Possible meanings are 1) "the Zealot" is a title that indicates he was part of the group of people who wanted to free the Jewish people from Roman rule. Alternate translation: "the patriot" or "the nationalist" or 2) "the Zealot" is a description that indicates he was zealous for God to be honored. Alternate translation: "the passionate one"

Luke 6:16

became a traitor
It may be necessary to explain what "traitor" means in this context. Alternate translation: "betrayed his friend" or "turned his friend over to enemies"

Luke 6:17

Connecting Statement:

Though Jesus especially addresses his disciples, there are many people around who listen.

with them

"with the twelve he had chosen" or "with his twelve apostles"

Luke 6:18

to be healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "for Jesus to heal them"

People who were troubled with unclean spirits were also healed
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus also healed people who were troubled with unclean spirits"

troubled with unclean spirits

"bothered by unclean spirits" or "controlled by evil spirits"

Luke 6:19

power to heal was coming out from him

"he had power to heal people" or "he was using his power to heal people"

Luke 6:20

Blessed are you

Jesus speaks this phrase three times. Each time, it indicates that God gives favor to certain people or that their situation is positive or good.

Blessed are you who are poor

"You who are poor receive God's favor" or "You who are poor benefit"

for yours is the kingdom of God

Languages that do not have a word for kingdom might say, "for God is your king" or "because God is your ruler."

yours is the kingdom of God

"the kingdom of God belongs to you." This could mean 1) "you belong to God's kingdom" or 2) "you will have authority in God's kingdom."

Luke 6:21

you will laugh

"you will laugh with joy" or "you will be joyful"

Luke 6:22

Blessed are you

"You receive God's favor" or "You benefit" or "How good it is for you"

exclude you

"reject you"

because of the Son of Man

"because you associate with the Son of Man" or

"because they reject the Son of Man"

Luke 6:23

in that day

"when they do those things" or "when that happens"

leap for joy

This idiom means "be extremely joyful"

a great reward

"a large payment" or "good gifts"

Luke 6:24

woe to you

"how terrible it is for you." Jesus speaks this phrase three times. It is the opposite of "blessed are you." Each time, it indicates that God's anger is directed at the people, or that something negative or bad awaits them.

woe to you who are rich

"how terrible it is for you who are rich" or "trouble will come to you who are rich"

your comfort

"what comforts you" or "what satisfies you" or "what makes you happy"

Luke 6:25

who are full now

"whose stomachs are full now" or "who eat much now"

who laugh now

"who are happy now"

Luke 6:26

Woe to you

"How terrible it is for you" or "How sad you should be"

when all men speak

Here "men" is used in the generic sense the includes all people. Alternate translation: "when all people speak" or "when everyone speaks"

that is how their ancestors treated the false prophets
"their ancestors also spoke well of the false prophets"

Luke 6:27

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues to speak to his disciples and the crowd who is listening to him as well.

to you who are listening
Jesus now begins to speak to the entire crowd, rather than just to his disciples.

love ... do good
Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

love your enemies and
This does not mean those listening were to only love their enemies and not their friends. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "love your enemies, not only your friends, and"

Luke 6:28

Bless ... pray
Each of these commands is to be followed continually, not just a single time.

Bless those
God is the one who blesses. This can made explicit.
Alternate translation: "Ask God to bless those"

those who curse you
"those who habitually curse you"

those who mistreat you
"those who habitually mistreat you"

Luke 6:29

To him who strikes you
"If anyone hits you"

on the one cheek
"on one side of your face"

offer him also the other
It may be helpful to state what the attacker will do to the person. Alternate translation: "turn your face so that he can strike the other cheek also"

do not withhold
"do not prevent him from taking"

Luke 6:30

Give to everyone who asks you
"If anyone asks you for something, give it to him"

do not ask him to give
"do not require him to give" or "do not demand that he give"

Luke 6:31

As you want people to do to you, you should do the same to them
In some languages it may be more natural to reverse the order. Alternate translation: "You should do to people the same as what you want them to do to you" or "Treat people they way you want them to treat you"

Luke 6:32

what reward is there for you?
"what reward will you receive?" or "what praise will you receive for doing that?" This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "you will not receive any reward for that." or "God will not reward you for that."

Luke 6:33

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 6:34

people from whom you hope to be repaid
Here the word "hope" means to confidently expect that what one desires will happen. The person who hopes in this way believes that what he desires will happen. The verb "to be repaid" can be expressed with an active form. Alternate translation: "people whom you expect will repay you" or "people whom you believe will repay you"

to receive back the same amount
The law of Moses commanded the Jews not to receive interest on money they loaned to other Jews.

Luke 6:35

expecting nothing in return
"not expecting the person to return what you have given him" or "not expecting the person to give you anything"

your reward will be great
"you will receive a great reward" or "you will receive good payment" or "you will get good gifts because of it"

you will be sons of the Most High
It is best to translate "sons" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human son or child.

sons of the Most High
Make sure that the word "sons" is plural so it is not confused with Jesus's title "The Son of the Most High."

unthankful and evil people
"people who do not thank him and who are evil"

Luke 6:36

your Father
This refers to God. It is best to translate "Father" with the same word your language would naturally use to refer to a human father.

Luke 6:37

Do not judge
"Do not judge people" or "Do not harshly criticize people"

and you
"and as a result you"

you will not be judged
Jesus does not say who will not judge. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not judge you" or 2) "no one will judge you"

Do not condemn
"Do not condemn people"

you will not be condemned
Jesus does not say who will not condemn. Possible meanings are 1) "God will not condemn you" or 2) "no one will condemn you"

you will be forgiven
Jesus does not say who will forgive. Possible meanings are 1) "God will forgive you" or 2) "people will forgive you"

Luke 6:38

it will be given to you
Jesus does not say exactly who will give. Possible meanings are 1) "someone will give it to you" or 2) "God will give it to you"

A good amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over—will pour into your lap

Jesus speaks either of God or of people giving generously as if he were speaking of a generous grain merchant. Alternate translation: "God will pour into your lap a generous amount—pressed down, shaken together and spilling over" or "Like a generous grain merchant who presses down the grain and shakes it together and pours in so much grain that it spills over, they will give generously to you"

A good amount
"A generous amount" or "A large amount"

it will be measured back to you
Jesus does not say exactly who will measure. Possible meanings are 1) "they will measure things back to you" or 2) "God will measure things back to you"

Luke 6:39

Connecting Statement:
Jesus includes some examples to make his point.

Can a blind person guide another blind person?
Jesus used this question to get the people to think about something that they already know. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "We all know that a blind person cannot guide another blind person."

blind person
The person who is "blind" is a metaphor for a person who has not been taught as a disciple.

If he did
Some languages might prefer, "if one did."

they would both fall into a pit, would they not?
This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "both of them would fall into a hole."

Luke 6:40

A disciple is not greater than his teacher
"A disciple does not surpass his teacher." Possible meanings are 1) "A disciple does not have more knowledge than his teacher" or 2) "A disciple does not have more authority than his teacher."

everyone when he is fully trained
"every disciple who has been trained well" or "every disciple whose teacher has fully taught him"

Luke 6:41

Why do you look ... brother's eye, but you do not notice the log that is in your own eye?

Jesus uses this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "Do not look ... brothers eye while you ignore the log that is in your own eye."

the tiny piece of straw that is in your brother's eye
This is a metaphor that refers to the less important faults of a fellow believer.

tiny piece of straw
"speck" or "splinter" or "bit of dust." Use a word for the smallest thing that commonly falls into a person's eyes.

brother
Here "brother" refers to a fellow Jew or a fellow believer in Jesus.

do not notice the log that is in your own eye
"do not notice that you have a log in your own eye"

the log that is in your own eye
This is a metaphor for a person's most important faults. A log could not literally go into a person's eye. Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that a person should pay attention to his own more important faults before he deals with another person's less important faults.

log
"beam" or "plank"

Luke 6:42

How can you say ... eye?
Jesus asks this question to challenge the people to pay attention to their own sins before they pay attention to another person's sins. Alternate translation: "You should not say ... eye."

Luke 6:43

General Information:
People can tell if a tree is good or bad, and what type of tree it is, by the fruit it produces. Jesus uses this as an unexplained metaphor—we know what kind of person someone is when we see his actions.

For there is
"This is because there is." This indicates that what follows is the reason why we should not judge our brother.

good tree
"healthy tree"

rotten fruit
fruit that is decaying or bad or worthless

Luke 6:44

each tree is known
People recognize the kind of tree by the fruit it bears. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people know the type of a tree" or "people recognize a tree"

thornbush
a plant or shrub that has thorns

briar bush
a vine or shrub that has thorns

Luke 6:45

General Information:
Jesus compares the thoughts of a person to his good or evil treasure. When a good person has good thoughts, he engages in good actions. When an evil person thinks evil thoughts, he engages in evil actions.

The good man
The word "good" here means righteous or moral.

good man
The word "man" here refers to a person, male or female. Alternate translation: "good person"

the good treasure of his heart
Here the good thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they were treasures stored in the heart of that person, and "his heart" is a metonym for the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "the good things he keeps deep inside himself" or "the good things he values very intensely"

produces what is good
Producing what is good is a metaphor for doing what is good. Alternate translation: "does what is good"

the evil treasure of his heart
Here the evil thoughts of a person are spoken of as if they were evil things stored in the heart of that person, and "his heart" is a metonym the person's inner being. Alternate translation: "the evil things he keeps deep inside himself" or "the evil things he values very intensely"

out of the abundance of the heart his mouth speaks
Here "heart" represents the person's mind or inner being. The phrase "his mouth" represents the person as a whole. Alternate translation: "what he thinks in his heart affects what he says with his mouth" or "a person will speak aloud what truly values inside of himself"

Luke 6:46

Lord, Lord
Here the repetition of these words is used as an exclamation. People repeat a name or title in this way when trying to find someone or to get someone's attention.

Luke 6:47

General Information:
In verse 47-48 Jesus compares the person who obeys his teaching to a man who builds a house on rock where it will be safe from floods.

Every person who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them, I will tell you what he is like
It may be clearer to change the order of this sentence. Alternate translation: "I will tell you what every person is like who comes to me and hears my words and obeys them"

Luke 6:48

dug down deep in the ground and built the house's foundation on solid rock
"dug down deep into the ground until he found a large, solid rock. Then he built his house on that rock so that it would be strong and stable." Some cultures may not be familiar with this process of building a house and may need to use another image for a stable foundation.

torrent of water
"fast-moving water" or "river"

flowed against
"crashed against"

shake it
Possible meanings are 1) "cause it to shake" or 2) "destroy it."

because it had been well built
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because the man had built it well"

Luke 6:49

General Information:
Jesus compares the person who hears but does not obey his teaching to a man who builds a house that has no foundation and so will collapse when the flood comes.

But the person
"But" shows a strong contrast to the previous person who built with a foundation.

on top of the ground without a foundation
Some cultures may not know that a house with a foundation is stronger. Additional information may be helpful. Alternate translation: "but he did not dig down and build first a foundation"

torrent of water
"fast-moving water" or "river"

flowed against
"crashed against"

collapsed
fell down or came apart

the ruin of that house was complete
"that house was completely destroyed"

Chapter 7

Luke 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set quotations from the Old Testament farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text. The ULB does this with the quoted material in 7:27.

Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.

Special concepts in this chapter

Centurion

The centurion who asked Jesus to heal his slave ([Luke 7:2](#)) was doing many unusual things. A Roman soldier would almost never go to a Jew for anything, and most wealthy people did not love or care for their slaves. (See: centurion and faith)

John's Baptism

John baptized people to show that those he was baptizing knew they were sinners and were sorry for their sin. (See: repent and sin)

"Sinners"

Luke refers to a group of people as "sinners." The Jewish leaders considered these people to be hopelessly ignorant of the law of Moses, and so called them "sinners." In reality, the leaders were sinful. This situation can be taken as irony.

"Feet"

The feet of the people in the ancient Near East were very dirty because they wore sandals and the roads and trails were dusty and muddy. Only slaves washed other people's feet. The woman who washed Jesus's feet was showing him great honor.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

Luke 7:1	people who were listening to him" or "to the people who were present" or "for the people to hear"
General Information: Jesus enters Capernaum, where he heals a centurion's servant.	he entered Capernaum This begins a new event in the story.
in the hearing of the people The idiom "in the hearing" emphasizes that he wanted them to hear what he said. Alternate translation: "to the	Luke 7:2 who was highly regarded by him "whom the centurion valued" or "whom he respected"

Luke 7:3

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 7:4

asked him earnestly

"pleaded with him" or "begged him"

He is worthy

"The centurion is worthy"

Luke 7:5

our nation

"our people." This refers to the Jewish people.

Luke 7:6

continued on his way

"went along"

not far from the house

"near the house"

do not trouble yourself

The centurion was speaking politely to Jesus. Alternate translation: "do not trouble yourself by coming to my house" or "I do not wish to bother you"

come under my roof

This phrase is an idiom that means "come into my house." If your language has an idiom that means "come into my house," think about whether it would be good to use here.

Luke 7:7

just say a word

The servant understood that Jesus could heal the servant just by speaking. Here "word" refers to a command. Alternate translation: "just give the order"

my servant will be healed

The word that is translated here as "servant" is normally translated as "boy." It may indicate that the servant was very young or show the centurion's affection for him.

Luke 7:8

I also am a man who is under authority

"I also have someone over me that I must obey"

under me

"under my authority"

to my servant

The word that is translated here as "servant" is the typical word for a servant.

Luke 7:9

he was amazed at him

"he was amazed at the centurion"

I say to you

Jesus said this to emphasize the surprising thing that he was about to tell them.

not even in Israel have I found such faith.

The implication is that Jesus expected Jewish people to have this kind of faith, but they did not. He did not expect Gentiles to have this kind of faith, yet this man did. You may need to add this implied information. Alternate translation: "I have not found any Israelite who trusts me as much as this Gentile does!"

Luke 7:10

those who had been sent

It is understood that these were the people the centurion sent. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "the people whom the Roman officer had sent to Jesus"

Luke 7:11

Connecting Statement:

Jesus goes to the city of Nain, where he heals a man who had died.

Nain

This is the name of a city.

Luke 7:12

behold, a man who had died

The word "behold" alerts us to the introduction of the dead man into the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "there was a dead man who"

a man who had died was being carried out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people were carrying out of the city a man who had died"

carried out, the only son of his mother (who was a widow), and a rather large crowd
"carried out. He was his mother's only son, and she was a widow. A rather large crowd." This is background information about the dead man and his mother.

widow
a woman whose husband has died and who has not remarried

Luke 7:13

was deeply moved with compassion for her
"felt very sorry for her"

Luke 7:14

he went up
"he went forward" or "he approached the dead man"

the wooden frame on which they carried the body
This was a stretcher or bed used to move the body to the burial place. It did not have to be something in which the body was buried. Other translations may have the less common "bier" or "funeral couch."

I say to you, arise
Jesus says this to emphasize that the young man needs to obey him. "Listen to me! Arise"

Luke 7:15

The dead man
The man was not still dead; he was now alive. It may be necessary to state this clearly. Alternate translation: "The man who had been dead"

Luke 7:16

Connecting Statement:
This tells what happens as a result of Jesus healing the man who had died.

fear overcame all of them
"fear filled all of them." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they all became very afraid"

A great prophet has been raised among us
They were referring to Jesus, not to some unidentified prophet. "Raised" here is an idiom for "caused to become." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has caused one of us to become a great prophet"

looked upon
This idiom means "cared for"

Luke 7:17

This news about Jesus spread
"This news" refers to the things people were saying in verse 16. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People spread this report about Jesus" or "People told others this report about Jesus"

This news
"This report" or "This message"

Luke 7:18

John's disciples told him about all these things
This introduces a new event in the story.

told him
"told John"

all these things
"all the things Jesus was doing"

Luke 7:19

Connecting Statement:
John sends two of his disciples to question Jesus.

Luke 7:20

the men said, "John the Baptist has sent us to you to say, 'Are you ... or should we look for another?'"
This sentence can be rewritten so that it only has one direct quote. Alternate translation: "the men said that John the Baptist had sent them to him to ask, 'Are you the one who is coming, or should we look for another?'" or "the men said, 'John the Baptist has sent us to you to ask if you are the one who is coming, or if we should look for another.'"

Luke 7:21

In that hour
"At that time"

from evil spirits
It may be helpful to restate the healing. Alternate translation: "he healed them from evil spirits" or "he set people free from evil spirits"

Luke 7:22

said to them
"said to John's messengers" or "said to the messengers that John sent"

report to John
"tell John"

people who have died are being raised back to life
"dead people are being caused to live again"

the poor
This nominal adjective can be translated as a noun phrase. Alternate translation: "poor people"

Luke 7:23

The person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions is blessed
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God will bless the person who does not stop believing in me because of my actions"

The person who does not ... is blessed
"People who do not ... are blessed" or "Anyone who does not ... is blessed" or "Whoever does not ... is blessed."
This is not a specific person.

does not stop believing in me because of
"continues to believe in me despite"

believing in me
"trusting me completely"

Luke 7:24

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins to speak to the crowd about John the Baptist. He asks rhetorical questions to lead them to think about what John the Baptist is really like.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?
This expects a negative answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a reed shaken by the wind? Of course not!" or "Surely you did not go out to see a reed being shaken by the wind!"

A reed shaken by the wind
Possible meanings of this metaphor are 1) a person who easily changes his mind, as reeds are easily moved by the wind, or 2) a person who talks a lot but does not say anything important, as reeds rattle when the wind blows.

Luke 7:25

But what did you go out to see? A man dressed in soft clothes?
This expects a negative answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes? Of course not!" or "You certainly did not go out to see a man dressed in soft clothes!"

dressed in soft clothes
This refers to expensive clothing. Normal clothing was rough. Alternate translation: "wearing expensive clothing"

kings' palaces
A palace is a large, expensive house that a king lives in.

Luke 7:26

But what did you go out to see? A prophet?
This expects a positive answer. These questions can be written as a question with an answer or as a statement. Alternate translation: "Did you go out to see a prophet? Of course you did!" or "But you actually went out to see a prophet!"

Yes, I say to you
Jesus says this to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

more than a prophet
This phrase means that John was indeed a prophet, but that he was even greater than a typical prophet. Alternate translation: "not just an ordinary prophet" or "much more important than a normal prophet"

Luke 7:27

This is he of whom it is written
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "John is the one the prophets wrote about long ago"

See, I am sending
In this verse, Jesus is quoting the prophet Malachi and saying that John is the messenger of which Malachi spoke.

before your face
This idiom means "in front of you" or "to go ahead of you"

your
The word "your" is singular because God was speaking to the Messiah in the quotation.

Luke 7:28

I say to you

Jesus is speaking to the crowd, so "you" is plural. Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the truth of the surprising thing he is about to say next.

among those born of women

"among those to whom a woman has given birth." This is a metaphor that refers to all people. Alternate translation: "of all the people who have ever lived"

none is greater than John

"John is the greatest"

the one who is least in the kingdom of God

This refers to anyone who is part of the kingdom that God will establish.

is greater than he is

The spiritual state of people in the kingdom of God will be higher than that of the people before the kingdom was established. Alternate translation: "has higher spiritual status than John"

Luke 7:29

General Information:

Luke, the author of this book, comments on how people responds to John and Jesus.

When all the people heard this, including the tax collectors, they declared that God is righteous, because they had been baptized with the baptism of John

This verse could be reordered to be more clear.

Alternate translation: "When all the people who had been baptized by John, including the tax collectors, heard this, they declared that God is righteous"

they declared that God is righteous

"they said that God had shown himself to be righteous" or "they declared that God had acted righteously"

because they had been baptized with the baptism of John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "because they had let John baptize them" or "because John had baptized them"

Luke 7:30

rejected God's purpose for themselves

"rejected what God wanted them to do" or "chose to disobey what God told them"

they had not been baptized by John

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they did not let John baptize them" or "they rejected John's baptism"

Luke 7:31

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues speaking to the people about John the Baptist.

To what, then, can I compare the people of this generation? What are they like?

Jesus uses these questions to introduce a comparison. They can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "This is what I compare this generation to. This is what they are like."

I compare ... What are they like

These are two ways of saying that this is a comparison.

the people of this generation

The people living when Jesus spoke.

Luke 7:32

They are like

These words are the beginning of Jesus's comparison.

Jesus is saying that the people are like children who are never satisfied with the way other children act.

marketplace

a large, open-air area where people come to sell their goods

and you did not dance

"but you did not dance to the music"

and you did not cry

"but you did not cry with us"

Luke 7:33

eating no bread

Possible meanings are 1) "frequently fasting" or 2) "not eating normal food."

you say, 'He has a demon.'

Jesus was quoting what people were saying about John.

This can be stated without the direct quote. Alternate translation: "you say that he has a demon." or "you accuse him of having a demon."

Luke 7:34

The Son of Man came

Jesus expected the people to understand that he was referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, came"

you say, 'Look, he is a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors and sinners!'

This can be translated as an indirect quote. If you translated "The Son of Man" as "I, the Son of man," you can state this as an indirect statement and use the first person. Alternate translation: "you accuse him of eating and drinking too much and of being a friend of tax collectors and sinners." or "you say that I am a gluttonous man and a drunkard, a friend of tax collectors sinners."

he is a gluttonous man

"he is a greedy eater" or "he continually eats too much food"

a drunkard

"a drunk" or "he continually drinks too much alcohol"

Luke 7:35

wisdom is justified by all her children

This appears to be a proverb that Jesus applied to this situation, probably to teach that wise people would understand that the people should not have rejected Jesus and John.

Luke 7:36

General Information:

It was a custom in that time for onlookers to attend dinners without eating.

Connecting Statement:

A Pharisee invites Jesus to eat at his house.

Now one of the Pharisees

The marks the beginning of a new part of the story and introduces the Pharisee into the story.

reclined at the table to eat

"sat down at the table for the meal." It was the custom at a relaxed meal such as this dinner for men to eat while lying down comfortably around the table.

Luke 7:37

Behold, there was a woman

The word "behold" alerts us to a new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this.

who was a sinner

"who lived a sinful lifestyle" or "who had a reputation for living a sinful life." She may have been a prostitute.

an alabaster jar

"a jar made of soft stone." Alabaster is a soft, white rock. People stored precious things in alabaster jars.

of perfumed oil

"with perfume in it." The oil had something in it that made it smell nice. People rubbed it on themselves or sprinkled their clothing with it in order to smell nice.

Luke 7:38

anointed them with perfumed oil

"poured perfume on them"

Luke 7:39

he thought to himself, saying

"he said to himself"

If this man were a prophet, then he would know who and what type of woman is touching him, that she is a sinner

The Pharisee thought that Jesus was not a prophet because he allowed the sinful woman to touch him.

Alternate translation: "Apparently Jesus is not a prophet, because a prophet would know that this woman who is touching him is a sinner"

that she is a sinner

Simon assumed that a prophet would never allow a sinner to touch him. This part of his assumption can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "that she is a sinner, and he would not allow her to touch him"

Luke 7:40

Simon

This was the name of the Pharisee who invited Jesus into his home. This was not Simon Peter.

Luke 7:41

General Information:

To emphasize what he is going to tell Simon the Pharisee, Jesus tells him a story.

A certain moneylender had two debtors

"Two men owed money to a certain moneylender"

five hundred denarii ... fifty

"500 days' wages ... 50." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius." A "denarius" was a silver coin.

the other fifty

The understood information can be stated clearly.

Alternate translation: "the other debtor owed fifty denarii" or "the other debtor owed 50 days' wages"

Luke 7:42

he forgave them both

"he forgave their debts" or "he canceled their debts"

Luke 7:43

I suppose

Simon was cautious about his answer. Alternate translation: "Probably"

You have judged correctly

"You are right"

Luke 7:44

Jesus turned to the woman

Jesus directed Simon's attention to the woman by turning to her.

You gave me no water for my feet

It was a basic responsibility of a host to provide water and a towel for guests to wash and dry their feet after walking on dusty roads.

You ... but she

Jesus twice uses these phrases to contrast Simon's lack of courtesy with the woman's extreme actions of gratitude.

she has wet my feet with her tears

The woman used her tears in place of the missing water.

wiped them with her hair

The woman used her hair in place of the missing towel.

Luke 7:45

You did not give me a kiss

A good host in that culture would greet his guest with a kiss on the cheek. Simon did not do this.

did not stop kissing my feet

"has continued to kiss my feet"

kissing my feet

The woman kissed the feet of Jesus rather than his cheek as a sign of extreme repentance and humility.

Luke 7:46

You did not ... but she

Jesus continues to contrast Simon's poor hospitality with the actions of the woman.

anoint my head with oil

"put oil on my head." This was the custom to welcome an honored guest. Alternate translation: "welcome me by anointing my head with oil"

anointed my feet

The woman greatly honored Jesus by doing this. She demonstrated humility by anointing his feet instead of his head.

Luke 7:47

I say to you

This emphasizes the importance of the statement that follows.

her sins, which were many, have been forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has forgiven her many sins"

for she loved much

Her love was the evidence that her sins were forgiven. Some languages require that the object of "love" be stated. Alternate translation: "for she greatly loves the one who forgave her" or "for she loves God very much"

the one who is forgiven little

"anyone who is forgiven only a few things." In this sentence Jesus states a general principle. However, he expected Simon to understand that he showed very little love for Jesus.

Luke 7:48

Then he said to her

"Then he said to the woman"

Your sins are forgiven

"You are forgiven." This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I forgive your sins"

Luke 7:49

reclining together

"reclining together around the table" or "eating together"

Who is this that even forgives sins?

The religious leaders knew that only God could forgive sins and did not believe that Jesus was God. This

question was probably intended to be an accusation.
Alternate translation: "Who does this man think he is?
Only God can forgive sins!" or "Why is this man
pretending to be God, who alone can forgive sins?"

Luke 7:50

Your faith has saved you
"Because of your faith, you are saved." The abstract
noun "faith" could be stated as an action. Alternate
translation: "Because you believe, you are saved"

Go in peace

This is a way of saying good-bye while giving a blessing
at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do
not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you
go"

Chapter 8

Luke 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Several times in this chapter Luke changes his topic without marking the change. You should not try to make these rough changes smooth.

Special concepts in this chapter

Miracles

Jesus made a storm stop by speaking to it, he made a dead girl alive by speaking to her, and he made evil spirits leave a man by speaking to them. (See: miracle)

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Parables

The parables were short stories that Jesus told so that people would easily understand the lesson he was trying to teach them. He also told the stories so that those who did not want to believe in him would not understand the truth ([Luke 8:4-15](#)).

Luke 8:1

General Information:

These verses give background information about Jesus's preaching while traveling.

It happened

This phrase is used here to mark a new part of the story.

Luke 8:2

who had been healed of evil spirits and diseases

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whom Jesus had set free from evil spirits and healed of diseases"

Mary

One of the "certain women."

Mary who was called Magdalene ... seven demons had been driven out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Mary, whom people called Magdalene ... Jesus had driven out seven demons"

Luke 8:3

Joanna ... Susanna

Two of the "certain women"

Joanna, the wife of Chuza, Herod's manager

Joanna was Chuza's wife, and Chuza was Herod's

manager. "Joanna, the wife of Herod's manager, Chuza"

provided for their needs

"financially supported Jesus and his twelve disciples"

Luke 8:4

General Information:

Jesus tells the parable of the soils to the crowd. He explains its meaning to his disciples in 8:11:15.

coming to him

"coming to Jesus"

Luke 8:5

A farmer went out to sow his seed

"A farmer went out to scatter some seed in a field" or "A farmer went out to scatter some seeds in a field"

some fell
"some of the seed fell" or "some of the seeds fell"

it was trampled underfoot
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"people walked on it" or "people walked on them"

birds of the sky
This idiom can be translated simply as "birds" or as
"birds flew down and" to keep the sense of "sky."

devoured it
"ate it all" or "ate them all"

Luke 8:6

it withered away
"each plant became dry and shriveled up" or "the
plants became dry and shriveled up"

it had no moisture
"it was too dry" or "they were too dry." The cause can
also be stated. Alternate translation: "the ground was
too dry"

Luke 8:7

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes telling the parable to the crowd.

choked it
The thorn plants took all the nutrients, water, and
sunlight, so the farmer's plants could not grow well.

Luke 8:8

produced a crop
"grew a harvest" or "grew more seeds"

a hundred times greater
This means a hundred times more than the seeds that
were sown.

Whoever has ears to hear, let him hear
Jesus is emphasizing that what he has just said is
important and may take some effort to understand and
put into practice. The phrase "ears to hear" here is a
metonym for the willingness to understand and obey.
Since Jesus is speaking directly to his audience, you
may prefer to use the second person here. Alternate
translation: "Let the one who is willing to listen, listen"
or "The one who is willing to understand, let him
understand and obey" or "If you are willing to listen,
listen" or "If you are willing to understand, then
understand and obey"

Luke 8:9

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 8:10

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins to speak to his disciples.

The knowledge of ... God has been given to you
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"God has given to you the knowledge of ... God" or "God
has made you able to understand ... God"

the secrets of the kingdom of God
These are truths that have been hidden, but that Jesus
is now revealing them.

for others
"for other people." This refers to the people who
rejected the teaching of Jesus and did not follow him.

seeing they may not see
"though they see, they will not perceive." This is a quote
from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may need to
state the object of the verbs. Alternate translation:
"though they see things, they will not understand them"
or "though they see things happen, they will not
understand what they mean"

hearing they may not understand
"though they hear, they will not understand." This is a
quote from the prophet Isaiah. Some languages may
need to state the object of the verbs. Alternate
translation: "though they hear instruction, they will not
understand the truth"

Luke 8:11

Connecting Statement:
Jesus begins to explain the meaning of the parable that
he told in [Luke 8:5-8](#).

The seed is the word of God
"The seed is the message from God"

Luke 8:12

The ones along the road are those
"The seeds that fell along the path are those." Jesus tells
what happens to the seeds as it relates to people.
Alternate translation: "The seeds that fell along the
road represent people" or "In the parable, the seeds
that fell along the road represent people"

are those who

Jesus speaks of the seeds showing something about people as if the seeds were the people. Alternate translation: "show what happens to people who"

the devil comes and takes away the word from their hearts
Here "hearts" is a metonym for people's minds or inner beings. Alternate translation: "the devil comes and takes away the message of God from their inner thoughts"

takes away

In the parable this was a metaphor of a bird snatching away the seeds. Try to use words in your language that keep that image.

hearts so they may not believe and be saved.

This is the devil's purpose. Alternate translation: "hearts because the devil thinks, 'They must not believe and they must not be saved.'" or "hearts so it will not be that they believe and God saves them."

Luke 8:13

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 8:14

The seeds that fell among the thorns are people

"The seeds that fell among the thorns represent people" or "In the parable the seeds that fell among the thorns represent people"

they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the cares and riches and pleasures of this life choke them"

cares

things that people worry about

pleasures of this life

"the things in this life that people enjoy"

they are choked by the cares and riches and pleasures of this life, and their fruit does not mature

This metaphor refers to the way weeds cut off light and nutrients from plants and keep them from growing. Alternate translation: "as weeds prevent good plants from growing, the cares, riches, and pleasures of this life keep these people from becoming mature"

their fruit does not mature

"they do not bear ripe fruit." Mature fruit is a metaphor for good works. Alternate translation: "so like a plant

that does not produce mature fruit, they do not produce good works"

Luke 8:15

the seed that fell on the good soil, these are the ones
"the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people" or "in the parable the seed that fell on the good soil represents the people"

hearing the word

"hearing the message"

with an honest and good heart

Here "heart" is a metonym for a person's thoughts or intentions. Alternate translation: "with an honest and good desire"

bear fruit with patient endurance

"produce fruit by enduring patiently" or "produce fruit by continued effort." Fruit is a metaphor for good works. Alternate translation: "like healthy plants that produce good fruit, they produce good works by persevering"

Luke 8:16

Connecting Statement:

Jesus continues with another parable.

No one

This marks the beginning of another parable.

Luke 8:17

nothing is hidden that will not be made known

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "everything that is hidden will be made known"

nor is anything secret that will not be known and come into the light

This double negative can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "and everything that is secret will be made known and will come into the light"

Luke 8:18

to the one who has, more will be given to him

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation: "whoever has understanding will be given more understanding" or "God will enable those who believe the truth to understand even more"

the one who does not have, even what he thinks he has will be taken away from him

It is clear from the context that Jesus is talking about understanding and believing. This can be stated clearly and changed to active form. Alternate translation:

"whoever does not have understanding will lose even what understanding he thinks he has" or "God will cause those who do not believe the truth not to understand even the little that they think they have understood"

Luke 8:19

brothers

These were Jesus's younger brothers—the sons of Mary and Joseph who were born after Jesus. Since the Father of Jesus was God, and their father was Joseph, they were technically his half-brothers. This detail is not normally translated.

Luke 8:20

He was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People told him" or "Someone told him"

wanting to see you

"and they want to see you"

Luke 8:21

My mother and my brothers are those who hear the word of God and do it

This metaphor expresses that the people who were coming to listen to Jesus were as important to him as his own family was. Alternate translation: "Those who hear the word of God and obey it are like a mother and brothers to me"

the word of God

"the message God has spoken"

Luke 8:22

Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples use a boat to cross Lake Genneseret. The disciples learn more about Jesus's power through the storm that arises.

the lake

This is the lake of Genneseret, which is also called the Sea of Galilee.

They set sail

This expression means they began to travel across the lake in their sailboat.

Luke 8:23

as they sailed

"as they went"

fell asleep

"began to sleep"

A terrible windstorm came down

"A storm of very strong winds began" or "Very strong winds suddenly began to blow"

their boat was filling with water

The strong winds caused high waves which pushed water over the sides of the boat. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the winds caused high waves that started to fill up their boat with water"

Luke 8:24

rebuked

spoke sharply to

the raging of the water

"the violent waves"

they ceased

"the wind and the waves stopped" or "they became still"

Luke 8:25

Where is your faith?

Jesus rebukes them mildly because they do not trust him to take care of them. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have faith!" or "You should trust me!"

Who then is this, that he commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him?

This question expresses shock and confusion over how Jesus is able to control the storm. Alternate translation: "What kind of man is this? He commands even the winds and the water, and they obey him!"

Luke 8:26

Connecting Statement:

Jesus and his disciples come ashore at Gerasa, where Jesus removes many demons from a man.

the region of the Gerasenes

Gerasenes were people from the city called Gerasa.

across the lake from Galilee

"on the other side of the lake from Galilee"

Luke 8:27

a certain man from the city
"a man from the city of Gerasa"

a certain man from the city who had demons
The man had demons; it was not the city that had demons. Alternate translation: "a certain man from the city, and this man had demons"

who had demons
"who was controlled by demons" or "whom demons controlled"

For a long time he had worn no clothes ... but among the tombs
This is background information about the man who had demons.

he had worn no clothes
"he had not worn clothes"

tombs
These are places where people put dead bodies, possibly caves or small buildings that the man could use for shelter.

Luke 8:28

When he saw Jesus
"When the man who had the demon saw Jesus"

he cried out
"he screamed" or "he shrieked"

fell down before him
"lay down on the ground before Jesus." He did not fall accidentally.

he said with a loud voice
"he said loudly" or "he shouted out"

What have you to do with me
This idiom means "Why are you bothering me?"

Son of the Most High God
This is an important title for Jesus.

Luke 8:29

many times it had seized him
"many times it had taken control of the man" or "many times it had gone into him." This tells about what the demon had done many times before Jesus met the man.

though he was bound ... and kept under guard
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "though the people had bound him ... and guarded him"

he would be driven by the demon
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the demon would make him go"

Luke 8:30

Legion
Translate this with a word that refers to a large number of soldiers or people. Some other translations say "Army." Alternate translation: "Battalion" or "Brigade"

Luke 8:31

kept begging him
"kept begging Jesus"

Luke 8:32

Now a large herd of pigs was there feeding on the hillside
This is supplied as background information to introduce the pigs.

was there feeding on the hillside
"was nearby eating grass on a hill"

Luke 8:33

So the demons came out
The word "so" is used here to explain that the reason the demons came out the man was because Jesus had told them that they could go into the pigs.

rushed
ran very fast

the herd ... was drowned
"the herd ... drowned." No one caused the pigs to drown once they were in the water.

Luke 8:34

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 8:35

found the man from whom the demons had gone out
"saw the man whom the demons had left"

in his right mind
"sane" or "behaving normally"

sitting at the feet of Jesus

"sitting at the feet" here is an idiom that means "sitting humbly nearby" or "sitting in front of." Alternate translation: "sitting on the ground in front of Jesus"

they were afraid

It may be helpful to state explicitly that they were afraid of Jesus. Alternate translation: "they were afraid of Jesus"

Luke 8:36

those who had seen it

"those who had seen what had happened"

the man who had been possessed by demons had been healed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had possessed" or "Jesus had healed the man whom demons had controlled"

Luke 8:37

the region of the Gerasenes

"that area of the Gerasenes" or "the area where the Gerasene people lived." See how you translated this in 8:26 Luke 8:26

they were overwhelmed with great fear

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they were very afraid"

and returned

This is not the last thing that Jesus did in that place, so this can also be stated as "in order to return" or "to go back."

returned

The destination can be stated. Alternate translation: "returned across the lake"

Luke 8:38

The man

The events in these verses happened before Jesus left in the boat. It may be helpful to state this clearly at the beginning. Alternate translation: "Before Jesus and his disciples left, the man" or "Before Jesus and his disciples set sail, the man"

Luke 8:39

your home

"your household" or "your family"

give a full account of what God has done for you

"tell them everything about what God has done for you"

Luke 8:40

Connecting Statement:

When Jesus and his disciples return to Galilee on the other side of the lake, he heals the 12-year-old daughter of the ruler of the synagogue as well as a woman who has been bleeding for 12 years (8:43-48).

the crowd welcomed him

"the crowd joyfully greeted him"

Luke 8:41

one of the leaders of the synagogue

"one of the leaders at the local synagogue" or "a leader of the people who met at the synagogue in that city"

fell down at Jesus' feet

Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down at Jesus' feet" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus' feet." Jairus did not fall accidentally. He did this as a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

Luke 8:42

was dying

"was about to die"

As Jesus was on his way

Some translators may need to first say that Jesus had agreed to go with Jairus. Alternate translation: "So Jesus agreed to go with him. As he was on his way"

the crowds of people pressed together around him

"the people were crowding tightly around Jesus"

Luke 8:43

a woman was there

This introduces a new character in the story.

had been bleeding

"had a flow of blood." She was probably bleeding from her womb even when it was not the normal time for it. Some cultures may have a polite way of referring to this condition.

and could not be healed by anyone

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but no one could heal her"

Luke 8:44

touched the edge of his coat
"touched the fringe of his robe." Jewish men wore tassels on the edges of their robes as a part of their ceremonial dress as commanded in God's Law. This is likely what she touched.

Luke 8:45

the crowds of people are all around you and they are pressing in against you
By saying this, Peter was implying that anyone could have touched Jesus. This implicit information can be made explicit if necessary. Alternate translation: "there are many people crowding around you and pressing in against you, so any one of them might have touched you"

Luke 8:46

Someone did touch me
It may be helpful to distinguish this intentional "touch" from the accidental touches of the crowd. Alternate translation: "Someone deliberately touched me"

I know that power has gone out from me
Jesus did not lose power or become weak, but his power healed the woman. Alternate translation: "I know that healing power went out from me" or "I felt my power heal someone"

Luke 8:47

that she could not escape notice
"that she could not keep secret what she had done." It may be helpful to state what she did. Alternate translation: "that she could not keep it a secret that she was the one who had touched Jesus"

she came trembling
"she came trembling with fear"

fell down before him
Possible meanings are 1) "bowed down in front of Jesus" or 2) "lay down on the ground at Jesus's feet." She did not fall accidentally. This was a sign of humility and respect for Jesus.

In the presence of all the people
"In the sight of all the people"

Luke 8:48

Daughter
This was a kind way of speaking to a woman. Your language may have another way of showing this kindness.

your faith has made you well
"because of your faith, you have become well." The abstract noun "faith" could be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "because you believe, you are healed"

Go in peace
This idiom is a way of saying, "Goodbye" and giving a blessing at the same time. Alternate translation: "As you go, do not worry anymore" or "May God give you peace as you go"

Luke 8:49

While he was still speaking
"While Jesus was still speaking to the woman"

synagogue leader
This refers to Jairus (Luke 8:41).

Do not trouble the teacher
This statement implies that Jesus will not be able to do anything to help now that the girl is dead.

the teacher
This refers to Jesus.

Luke 8:50

she will be healed
"she will be well" or "she will live again"

Luke 8:51

When he came to the house
"When they came to the house." Jesus went there with Jairus. Some of Jesus's disciples also went with them.

he allowed no one to enter with him, except Peter ... mother
This double negative emphasizes that Peter and the others were the only ones whom Jesus allowed to enter. This could be stated positively. Alternate translation: "he allowed only Peter ... mother to enter with him"

the father of the child
This refers to Jairus.

Luke 8:52

all were mourning and wailing for her
This was the normal way of showing grief in that culture. Alternate translation: "all the people there were showing how sad they were and crying loudly because the girl had died"

Luke 8:53

began to mock him, knowing that she
"laughed at him because they knew the girl"

Luke 8:54

he took her by the hand
"Jesus took hold of the girl's hand"

Luke 8:55

Her spirit returned
"Her spirit returned to her body." The Jews understood that life was the result of the spirit coming into a person. Alternate translation: "She started breathing again" or "She came back to life" or "She became alive again"

Luke 8:56

to tell no one
This could be stated differently. Alternate translation: "not to tell anyone"

Chapter 9

Luke 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

"To preach the kingdom of God"

No one knows for sure what the words "kingdom of God" here refer to. Some say it refers to the reign of God on earth, and others say it refers to the gospel message that Jesus died to pay for his people's sins. It is best to translate this as "to preach about the kingdom of God" or "to teach them about how God was going to show himself as king."

Elijah

God had promised the Jews that the prophet Elijah would return before the Messiah came, so some people who saw Jesus do miracles thought Jesus was Elijah ([Luke 9:9](#), [Luke 9:19](#)). However, Elijah did come to earth to speak with Jesus ([Luke 9:30](#)). (See: prophet and christ and elijah)

"Kingdom of God"

The term "kingdom of God" is used in this chapter to refer to a kingdom that was still in the future when the words were spoken. (See: kingdomofgod)

Glory

Scripture often speaks of God's glory as a great, brilliant light. When people see this light, they are afraid. Luke says in this chapter that Jesus's clothing shone with this glorious light so that his followers could see that Jesus truly was God's Son. At the same time, God told them that Jesus was his Son. (See: glory and fear)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. An example in this chapter is: "Whoever would save his life will lose it, but whoever loses his life for my sake will save it." ([Luke 9:24](#)).

"Son of Man"

Jesus refers to himself as the "Son of Man" in this chapter

"Receiving"

This word appears several times in this chapter and means different things. When Jesus says, "If someone receives a little child like this in my name, he also is receiving me, and if someone receives me, he is also receiving the one who sent me" ([Luke 9:48](#)), he is speaking of people serving the child. When Luke says, "the people there did not receive him" ([Luke 9:53](#)), he means that the people did not believe in or accept Jesus. (See: believe)

Luke 9:1

Connecting Statement:

Jesus reminds his disciples not to depend on money and their things, gives them power, and then sends them out to various places.

power and authority

These two terms are used together to show that the twelve had both the ability and the right to heal people. Translate this phrase with a combination of words that include both of these ideas.

all demons

Possible meanings are 1) "every demon" or 2) "every kind of demon."

diseases

sicknesses

Luke 9:2

sent them out

"sent them to various places" or "told them to go"

Luke 9:3

He said to them

"Jesus said to the twelve." It may be helpful to state that this happened before they went out. Alternate translation: "Before they left, Jesus said to them"

Take nothing

"Do not take anything with you" or "Do not bring anything with you"

staff

large stick that people use for balance when climbing or walking on uneven ground, as well as for defense against attackers

wallet

a bag a traveler uses for carrying what he needs on a journey

bread

This is here used as a general reference to "food."

Luke 9:4

Whatever house you enter

"Any house you enter"

stay there

"remain there" or "temporarily live in that house as a guest"

until you leave

"until you leave that town" or "until you leave that place"

Luke 9:5

Wherever they do not receive you, when you leave

"Here is what you should do in any town where people do not receive you: When you leave"

shake off the dust from your feet as a testimony against them

To "shake off the dust from your feet" was an expression of strong rejection in that culture. It showed they did not want even the dust of that town to remain on them.

Luke 9:6

they departed

"they left the place where Jesus was"

healing everywhere

"healing wherever they went"

Luke 9:7

General Information:

Verses 7-9 interrupt the story to give information about Herod.

Now Herod

The word "Now" marks a pause in the main story. Here Luke tells background information about Herod.

Herod the tetrarch

This refers to Herod Antipas, who was the ruler of one-fourth of Israel.

perplexed

unable to understand, confused

it was said by some

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "some people said"

Luke 9:8

still others that one of the prophets of long ago had risen

The word "said" is understood from the previous phrase. Alternate translation: "still others said that one of the prophets of long ago had risen"

Luke 9:9

I beheaded John. Who is this
Herod assumes that it is impossible for John to rise from the dead. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "It cannot be John because I had his head cut off. So who is this man"

I beheaded John
Herod's soldiers would have carried out executions. Alternate translation: "I commanded my soldiers to cut off John's head"

Luke 9:10

Connecting Statement:
Though the disciples return to Jesus and they go to Bethsaida to spend time together, the crowds follow Jesus for healing and to listen to his teaching. He performs a miracle to provide bread and fish to the crowds as they return home.

apostles returned
"apostles came back to where Jesus was"

everything they had done
This refers to the teaching and healing that they did when they went to the other cities.

Bethsaida
This is the name of a city.

Luke 9:11

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:12

the day was about to come to an end
"the day was about to end" or "it was near the end of the day." The end of the day was at sunset. Alternate translation: "it was almost sunset"

an isolated place
This was a place far away from where people lived. Alternate translation: "a remote place" or "a place where no one lives"

Luke 9:13

five loaves of bread
A loaf of bread is a lump of dough that is shaped and baked.

two fish—unless we go and buy food for all these people
If "unless" is difficult to understand in your language, you could make a new sentence. "two fish. In order to feed all these people, we would have to go and buy food"

Luke 9:14

about five thousand men
"about 5,000 men." This number does not include the women and children who might have been present.

Have them sit down
"Tell them to sit down"

fifty each
"50 each"

Luke 9:15

So they did this
"This" refers to what Jesus told them to do Luke 9:14. They told the people to sit down in groups of about fifty people.

Luke 9:16

Taking the five loaves
"Jesus took the five loaves of bread"

up to heaven
This refers to looking up, toward the sky. The Jews believed that heaven was located above the sky.

he blessed them
This refers to the loaves of bread and the fish.

to set before
"to pass out to" or "to give to"

Luke 9:17

were satisfied
This idiom means they ate enough food so they were not hungry. Alternate translation: "they had as much as they wanted to eat"

Luke 9:18

Connecting Statement:
Jesus is praying, with only his disciples near him, and they begin to talk about who Jesus is. Jesus tells them that he will soon die and resurrect and urges them to follow him even if it becomes very hard to do that.

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new event.

praying by himself

"praying alone." The disciples were with Jesus, but he was praying personally and privately by himself.

Luke 9:19

John the Baptist

It may be helpful to restate part of the question here.

Alternate translation: "The crowds say you are John the Baptist"

that one of the prophets from long ago has risen

It may be helpful to clarify how this answer relates to Jesus's question. Alternate translation: "that you are one of the prophets from long ago and have risen"

has risen

"has come back to life"

Luke 9:20

Then he said to them

"Then Jesus said to his disciples"

Luke 9:21

he warned and instructed them

The combination of "warned" and "instructed" is a hendiadys that means "strongly warned" or "strictly instructed." Alternate translation: "he strongly warned them" or he strictly instructed them"

them to tell this to no one.

"not to tell anyone." or "that they should not tell anyone." This could be stated as a direct quote.

Alternate translation: "them, 'Do not tell anyone.'"

Luke 9:22

The Son of Man must suffer many things

"People will cause the Son of Man to suffer greatly"

The Son of Man ... and he will

Jesus is referring to himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... and I will"

be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the elders, chief priests, and scribes will reject him"

he will be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they will kill him"

on the third day

"three days after he dies" or "on the third day after his death"

be raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

"God will make him alive again" or "he will live again"

Luke 9:23

he said

"Jesus said"

to them all

This refers to the disciples who were with Jesus.

come after me

Coming after Jesus represents being one of his disciples. Alternate translation: "be my disciple" or "be one of my disciples"

must deny himself

"must not give in to his own desires" or "must forsake his own desires"

take up his cross daily and follow me

"carry his cross and follow me every day." The cross represents suffering and death. Taking up the cross represents being willing to suffer and die. To follow Jesus represents obeying him. Alternate translation: "must obey me every day even to the point of suffering and dying"

Luke 9:24

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:25

What profit is there for a person to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself?

The implied answer to this question is that it is not good. Alternate translation: "It will not benefit someone at all to gain the whole world and yet lose or forfeit himself."

to gain the whole world

"to get everything in the world"

lose or forfeit himself

"ruin himself or give up his life"

Luke 9:26

my words

"what I say" or "what I teach"

of him will the Son of Man be ashamed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:
"the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him"

the Son of Man ... when he comes in his own glory

Jesus was speaking about himself. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man ... when I come in my own glory"

the Father

This is an important title for God.

Luke 9:27

But truly I say to you

Jesus uses this phrase to emphasize the importance of what he will say next.

there are some standing here who will not taste death

"some of you who are standing here will not taste death"

before they see

Jesus was speaking to the people he was talking about. Alternate translation: "before you see"

will not taste death before they see the kingdom of God

"Taste death" is an idiom that means "die." This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "will see the kingdom of God before they die" or "will see the kingdom of God before you die"

Luke 9:28

Connecting Statement:

Eight days after Jesus tells his disciples that some would not die before they saw the kingdom of God, Jesus goes up the mountain to pray with Peter, James, and John, who all fall asleep while Jesus is changed to a dazzling appearance.

these words

This refers to what Jesus said to his disciples in the preceding verses.

Luke 9:29

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:30

Behold

The word "Behold" here alerts us to pay attention to the surprising information that follows. Alternate translation: "Suddenly"

Luke 9:31

who appeared in glory

This phrase gives information about how Moses and Elijah looked. Some languages would translate it as a separate clause. Alternate translation: "and they appeared in glorious splendor" or "and they were shining brightly"

his departure

"his leaving" or "how Jesus would leave this world."

This was a polite way of talking about his death.

Alternate translation: "his death"

Luke 9:32

Now

This word is used here to mark a pause in the main story. Here Luke tells about Peter, James, and John.

heavy with sleep

This idiom means "very sleepy."

they saw his glory

This refers to the brilliant light that surrounded them.

Alternate translation: "they saw brilliant light coming from Jesus" or "they saw very bright light coming out of Jesus"

the two men who were standing with him

This refers to Moses and Elijah.

Luke 9:33

As they were going away

"As Moses and Elijah were going away"

shelters

simple, temporary places in which to sit or sleep

Luke 9:34

As he was saying this

"While Peter was saying these things"

they were afraid

These adult disciples were not afraid of clouds. This phrase indicates that some kind of unusual fear came

over them with the cloud. Alternate translation: "they were terrified"

they entered into the cloud
This can be expressed in terms of what the cloud did.
Alternate translation: "the cloud surrounded them"

Luke 9:35

A voice came out of the cloud
It is understood that the voice could only have belonged to God. Alternate translation: "God spoke to them from the cloud"

Son
This is an important title for Jesus, the Son of God.

the one who is chosen
This can be stated with an active form. Alternate translation: "the one I have chosen" or "I have chosen him"

Luke 9:36

They kept silent ... what they had seen
This is information that tells what happened after the story as a result of the events in the story itself.

kept silent ... told no one
The first phrase refers to their immediate response, and the second refers to what they did in the following days.

Luke 9:37

Connecting Statement:
The next day after Jesus's dazzling appearance, Jesus heals a demon-possessed boy that the disciples were unable to make better.

Luke 9:38

Behold, a man from the crowd
The word "behold" alerts us to the new person in the story. Your language may have a way of doing this. English uses "There was a man in the crowd who"

Luke 9:39

You see, a spirit
The phrase "You see" introduces us to the evil spirit in the man's story. Your language may have a way of doing this. Alternate translation: "There is an evil spirit that"

he foams at the mouth
"foam comes out of his mouth." When a person has a seizure, he can have trouble breathing or swallowing. This causes white foam to form around his mouth.

Luke 9:40

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:41

Jesus answered and said
"Jesus answered by saying"

You unbelieving and perverse generation
Jesus says this to the crowd that has gathered, and not to his disciples.

perverse generation
"corrupt generation"

how long must I be with you and put up with you?
Here "you" is plural. Jesus uses these questions to express his sadness that the people do not believe. They can be written as statements. Alternate translation: "I have been with you so long, yet you do not believe. I wonder how long I must put up with you."

Bring your son here
Here "your" is singular. Jesus is speaking directly to the father who addressed him.

Luke 9:42

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:43

they were all amazed at the greatness of God
Jesus performed the miracle, but the crowd recognized that God was the power behind the healing.

everything he was doing
"everything Jesus was doing"

Luke 9:44

Let these words go deeply into your ears
This is an idiom that means they should pay attention. Alternate translation: "Listen carefully and remember" or "Do not forget this"

The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men
This can be stated with an active clause. Here "hands" refers to power or control. Alternate translation: "Someone will betray the Son of Man and put him under the control of men"

The Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men
Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. The word "hands" is a synecdoche for the people whose hands they are or a metonym for the power that uses those hands. You may need to make explicit who these men are. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man will be betrayed into the hands of men" or "The Son of Man will be betrayed into the power of his enemies" or "I, the Son of Man will be betrayed to my enemies"

Luke 9:45

It was hidden from them
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God hid the meaning from them"

Luke 9:46

General Information:
The disciples begin to argue about who will be the most powerful among them.

among them
"among the disciples"

Luke 9:47

knowing the reasoning in their hearts
Here "hearts" is a metonym for their minds. Alternate translation: "knowing the reasoning in their minds" or "knowing what they were thinking"

Luke 9:48

in my name
This refers to a person doing something as a representative of Jesus. Alternate translation: "because of me"

in my name welcomes me
This metaphor could also be stated as a simile. Alternate translation: "in my name, it is like he is welcoming me"

the one who sent me
"God, who sent me"

the one who is great
"the one whom God considers to be most important"

Luke 9:49

John answered
"In reply, John said" or "John replied to Jesus." John was responding to what Jesus had said about being the greatest. He was not answering a question.

we saw
John speaks of himself but not Jesus, so "we" here is exclusive.

in your name
This means the person was speaking with the power and authority of Jesus.

Luke 9:50

Do not stop him
This can be stated positively. Alternate translation: "Allow him to continue"

whoever is not against you is for you
Some modern languages have sayings that mean the same thing. Alternate translation: "if a person does not keep you from working, it is as if he were helping you" or "if someone is not working against you, he is working with you"

Luke 9:51

General Information:
It is now obvious that Jesus has decided to go to Jerusalem.

When the days drew near for him to be taken up
Here "be taken up" implies that Jesus will be taken up to heaven. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When the time was coming for him to go up heaven" or "When it was almost time for him to leave this world"

set his face
This idiom means he "firmly decided." Alternate translation: "made up his mind" or "decided"

Luke 9:52

to prepare everything for him
This means to make arrangements for his arrival there, possibly including a place to speak, a place to stay, and food.

Luke 9:53

did not welcome him
"did not want him to stay"

because he had set his face to go to Jerusalem
The Samaritans and the Jews hated each other.
Therefore the Samaritans would not help Jesus on his journey to Jerusalem, the Jewish capital.

Luke 9:54

saw this
"saw that the Samaritans did not receive Jesus"

command fire to come down from heaven and destroy them
James and John suggested this method of judgment because they knew that this was how the prophets such as Elijah had judged people who rejected God.

Luke 9:55

he turned and rebuked them
"Jesus turned and rebuked James and John." Jesus did not condemn the Samaritans as the disciples expected.

Luke 9:56

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 9:57

someone
This was not one of the disciples.

Luke 9:58

Foxes have holes ... nowhere to lay his head
Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being Jesus's disciple. Jesus implies that if the man were to follow him, that man too might not have a home. Alternate translation: "Foxes have holes ... nowhere to lay his head. So do not expect that you will have a home"

Foxes
These are land animals similar to small dogs. They sleep in a den or a burrow in the ground.

birds in the sky
"birds that fly in the air"

the Son of Man has ... his head
Jesus is speaking about himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "I, the Son of Man, have ... my head"

nowhere to lay his head
"nowhere to rest my head" or "nowhere to sleep." Jesus exaggerates to emphasize that he has no permanent

home and that people did not often invite him to stay with them.

Luke 9:59

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues to talk with the people along the road.

Follow me
By saying this Jesus is asking the person to become his disciple and to go with him.

first let me go and bury my father
It is unclear whether the man's father has died and he will bury him immediately, or if the man wants to stay for a longer amount of time until his father dies so he can bury him then. The main point is the man wants to do something else first before he follows Jesus.

first let me go
"before I do that, let me go"

Luke 9:60

Leave the dead to bury their own dead
Jesus does not mean literally that dead people will bury other dead people. Possible meanings of "the dead" are 1) it is a metaphor for those who will soon die, or 2) it is a metaphor for those who do not follow Jesus and are spiritually dead. The main point is that a disciple must not let anything delay him from following Jesus.

the dead
This refers to dead people in general. Alternate translation: "the dead people"

Luke 9:61

I will follow you
"I will join you as a disciple" or "I am ready to follow you"

first let me say goodbye to those in my home
"before I do that, let me tell my people at my home that I am leaving"

Luke 9:62

No one ... fit for the kingdom of God
Jesus responds with a proverb to teach the man about being his disciple. Jesus means that a person is not suitable for the kingdom to God if he focuses on people in his past instead of following Jesus.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

No one who puts his hand to the plow

Here "puts his hand to" something is an idiom that means the person starts to do something. Alternate translation: "No one who starts to plow his field"

looks back

Anyone who is looking back while plowing cannot guide the plow where it needs to go. That person must focus on looking forward in order to plow well.

fit for the kingdom of God

"useful for the kingdom of God" or "suitable for the kingdom of God"

Chapter 10

Luke 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Harvest

Harvest is when people go out to get the food they have planted so they can bring it to their houses and eat it. Harvest can also refer to the food that is gathered. Jesus used this as a metaphor to teach his followers that they need to go and tell other people about Jesus so those people can be part of God's kingdom. (See: harvest and faith)

Neighbor

A neighbor is anyone who lives nearby. The Jews helped their Jewish neighbors who needed help, and they expected their Jewish neighbors to help them. Jesus wanted them to understand that people who were not Jews were also their neighbors, so he told them a parable

Luke 10:1

General Information:

Jesus sends out 70 more people ahead of him.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new event in the story.

seventy

"70." Some versions say "seventy-two" or "72." You may want to include a footnote that says that.

sent them out two by two

"sent them out in groups of two" or "sent them out with two people in each group"

Luke 10:2

He said to them

This was before the men actually went out. Alternate translation: "He had said to them" or "Before they went out he told them"

The harvest is plentiful, but the laborers are few

"There is a big crop, but not enough workers to bring it in." Jesus means there are many people ready to enter God's kingdom, but there are not enough disciples to go teach and help the people.

Luke 10:3

Go on your way

"Go to the cities" or "Go to the people"

I send you out as lambs in the midst of wolves

Wolves attack and kill sheep. This metaphor therefore means that there are people who would attempt to harm the disciples that Jesus is sending out. The names of other animals could be substituted. Alternate translation: "when I send you out, people will want to harm you, as wolves attack sheep"

Luke 10:4

Do not carry a money bag, or a traveler's bag, or sandals

"Do not take with you a bag, a traveler's bag, or sandals"

greet no one on the road

"do not greet anyone on the road." Jesus was emphasizing that they should go quickly to the towns and do this work. He was not telling them to be rude.

Luke 10:5

May peace be on this house

This was both a greeting and a blessing. Here "house" refers to those who live in the house. Alternate translation: "May the people in this household receive peace"

Luke 10:6

a son of peace

The phrase "son of peace" here is a metaphor for a person who wants peace with God and with people. Alternate translation: "a peaceful person"

your peace will rest upon him

Here "peace" is described as a living thing that can choose where to stay. Alternate translation: "he will have the peace you blessed him with"

if not

It may be helpful to restate the entire phrase. Alternate translation: "if there is no person of peace there" or "if the owner of the house is not a peaceful person"

it will return to you

Here "peace" is described as a living thing that can choose to leave. Alternate translation: "you will have that peace" or "he will not receive the peace you blessed him with"

Luke 10:7

Remain in that same house

Jesus was not saying that they should stay in the house all day, but that they should sleep at the same house every night they were there. Alternate translation: "Continue to sleep at that house"

for the laborer is worthy of his wages

This is a general principle that Jesus was applying to the men he was sending out. Since they would be teaching and healing the people, the people should provide them with a place to stay and with food.

Do not move around from house to house

Moving around from house to house means going to different houses. It can be made clear that he was talking about staying overnight at different houses. "Do not go sleep at a different house each night"

Luke 10:8

and they receive you

"if they welcome you"

eat what is set before you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "eat whatever food they give you"

Luke 10:9

the sick

This refers to sick people in general. Alternate translation: "the sick people"

The kingdom of God has come close to you

The abstract noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verbs "reign" or "rule." Possible meanings are 1) the kingdom of God will begin soon. Alternate translation: "God will soon rule everywhere as king" or 2) the

activities of kingdom of God are happening all around you. Alternate translation: "The proof that God is reigning is all around you"

Luke 10:10

and they do not receive you

"and the people of the city reject you"

Luke 10:11

Even the dust from your town that clings to our feet we wipe off against you

This is a symbolic action to show that they reject the people of the city. Alternate translation: "Just as you rejected us, we thoroughly reject you. We even reject the dust from your town that clings to our feet"

we wipe off

Since Jesus was sending these people out in groups of two, it would be two people saying this. So languages that have a dual form of "we" would use it.

But know this: The kingdom of God is near

The phrase "But know this" emphasizes the importance of what is said next. Alternate translation: "But be aware that the kingdom of God is near" or "But be sure of this: The kingdom of God is near"

The kingdom of God is near

The abstract noun "kingdom" can be expressed with the verbs "reign" or "rule." See how you translated a similar sentence in [Luke 10:8]

Luke 10:12

I say to you

Jesus was saying this to the 70 people he was sending out. He said this to show that he was about to say something very important.

that day

The disciples would have understood that this refers to the time of final judgment of sinners. Alternate translation: "judgment day"

it will be more tolerable for Sodom than for that town

"God will not judge Sodom as severely as he will judge that town." Alternate translation: "God will judge the people of that town more severely than he will judge the people of Sodom"

Luke 10:13

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida!
Jesus speaks as if the people of the cities of Chorazin and Bethsaida are there listening to him, but they are not.

If the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon
Jesus is describing a situation that could have happened in the past but did not. Alternate translation: "If someone had performed the miracles for the people of Tyre and Sidon that I performed for you"

they would have repented long ago, sitting
"the wicked people who lived there would have shown that they were sorry for their sins by sitting"

sitting in sackcloth and ashes
"wearing sackcloth and sitting in ashes"

Luke 10:14

But it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the judgment than for you
It may be helpful to clearly state the reason for their judgment. Alternate translation: "But because you did not repent and believe in me even though you saw me do miracles, God will judge you more severely than he will judge the people of Tyre and Sidon"

at the judgment
"on that final day when God judges everyone"

Luke 10:15

You, Capernaum
Jesus now speaks to the people in the city of Capernaum as if they are listening to him, but they are not.

do you think you will be exalted to heaven?
Jesus uses a question to rebuke the people of Capernaum for their pride. The expression "exalted to heaven" means "greatly exalted" or "honored."
Alternate translation: "you will certainly not go up to heaven!" or "God will not honor you!"

you will be brought down to Hades
This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you will go down to Hades" or "God will send you to Hades"

Luke 10:16

The one who listens to you listens to me
The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile.
Alternate translation: "When someone listens to you, it is as if they were listening to me"

the one who rejects you rejects me
The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile.
Alternate translation: "when someone rejects you, it is as if they were rejecting me"

the one who rejects me rejects the one who sent me
The comparison can be clearly stated as a simile.
Alternate translation: "when someone rejects me, it is as if they were rejecting the one who sent me"

the one who sent me
This refers to God the Father, who appointed Jesus for this special task. Alternate translation: "God, who sent me"

Luke 10:17

The seventy returned
Some languages will need to say that the seventy actually went out first, as the UDB does. This is implicit information that can be made explicit.

seventy
You may want to add a footnote: "Some versions have '72' instead of '70.'"

in your name
Here "name" refers to Jesus's power and authority.

Luke 10:18

I was watching Satan fall from heaven as lightning
Jesus used a simile to compare how God was defeating Satan when his 70 disciples were preaching in the towns to the way lightning strikes.

fall from heaven as lightning
Possible meanings are 1) fall as quickly as lightning strikes, or 2) fall down from heaven as lightning strikes downward. Since both meanings are possible, it may be best to keep the image.

Luke 10:19

authority to tread on serpents and scorpions
"authority to trample on snakes and crush scorpions."
Possible meanings are 1) snakes and scorpions are a metaphor for evil spirits. Alternate translation: "the

right to defeat evil spirits" or 2) this refers to actual snakes and scorpions.

tread on serpents and scorpions

This implies that they would do this and not be injured. Alternate translation: "walk on snakes and scorpions, which will not hurt you,"

scorpions

Scorpions are small animals with two claws and a poisonous stinger on their tail.

over all the power of the enemy

"I have given you authority to crush the power of the enemy" or "I have given you authority to defeat the enemy." The enemy is Satan.

Luke 10:20

do not rejoice only in this, that the spirits submit to you, but rejoice even more that your names are engraved in heaven
"do not rejoice only because the spirits submit to you" can also be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "rejoice that your names are written in heaven even more than you rejoice that the spirits submit to you"

your names are engraved in heaven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has written your names in heaven" or "your names are on the list of people who are citizens of heaven"

Luke 10:21

that same hour

"that same time"

Father

This is an important title for God.

Lord of heaven and earth

The phrase "heaven" and earth" represents everything that exists. Alternate translation: "Master over everyone and everything in heaven and earth"

these things

This refers to Jesus's previous teaching about the authority of the disciples. It may be best to simply say "these things" and let the reader determine the meaning.

the wise and understanding

The words "wise" and "understanding" are nominal adjectives that refer to people with these qualities. Because God had concealed truth from them, these people were not actually wise and understanding, even

though they thought they were. Alternate translation: "from people who think they are wise and have understanding"

those who are untaught, like little children

This refers to those who may not have much education but who are willing to accept Jesus's teachings in the same way that little children willingly listen to those they trust. Alternate translation: "people who may have little education, but who listen to God as little children do"

for so it was well pleasing in your sight

"for it pleased you to do this"

Luke 10:22

All things have been entrusted to me from my Father

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "My Father has handed everything over to me"

Father ... Son

These are important titles that describe the relationship between God and Jesus.

no one knows who the Son is except the Father

This double negative emphasizes that the Father is the only one who knows. Alternate translation: "The only one who knows who the Son is, is the Father"

knows ... knows

The word that is translated as "knows" means to know from personal experience. God the Father knows Jesus in this way.

the Son

Jesus is referring to himself in the third person.

no one knows who the Father is except the Son and those ... him

This double negative emphasizes that the Son is the only one who knows. Alternate translation: "The only one who knows who the Father is, is the Son"

those to whom the Son chooses to reveal him

"whoever the Son desires to show the Father to"

Luke 10:23

Then he turned around to the disciples and said privately

The word "privately" indicates that he was alone with his disciples. Alternate translation: "Later, when he was alone with his disciples, he turned to them and said"

Blessed are those who see the things that you see

This probably refers to the good works and miracles that Jesus was doing. Alternate translation: "How good it is for those who see the things that you see me doing"

Luke 10:24

and they did not see them
This implies that Jesus was not yet doing those things.
Alternate translation: "but they could not see them because I was not doing them yet"

the things that you hear
This probably refers to the teaching of Jesus. Alternate translation: "the things that you have heard me say"

and they did not hear them
This implies that Jesus was not yet teaching. Alternate translation: "but they could not hear them because I had not yet started to teach"

Luke 10:25

Connecting Statement:
Jesus replies with a story to a Jewish teacher who wants to test Jesus.

Behold, an expert in the law
This alerts us to a new event and a new person in the story.

stood up
This is an idiom that probably here means "began to act." Your language may have a different way of showing that the expert in the law had been present, listening to Jesus, and was now beginning to act. He was not necessarily sitting before he "stood up" and began to speak.

test him
"challenge Jesus"

Luke 10:26

What is written in the law? How do you read it?
Jesus is not seeking information. He uses these questions to test the Jewish teacher's knowledge.
Alternate translation: "Tell me what Moses wrote in the law and what you think it means."

What is written in the law?
This can be asked in active form. Alternate translation: "What did Moses write in the law?"

How do you read it?
"What have you read in it?" or "What do you understand it to say?"

Luke 10:27

You will love ... neighbor as yourself
The man is quoting what Moses wrote in the law.

with all your heart, with all your soul, with all your strength, and with all your mind
Here "heart" and "soul" are metonyms for a person's inner being. These four phrases are used together to mean "completely" or "earnestly."

your neighbor as yourself
This simile can be stated more clearly. Alternate translation: "love your neighbor as much as you love yourself"

Luke 10:28

General Information:
This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 10:29

But he, desiring to justify himself, said
"But the expert in the law wanted to find a way to justify himself, so he said" or "But wanting to appear righteous, the expert in the law said"

Who is my neighbor?
The man wanted to know whom he was required to love. Alternate translation: "Whom should I consider to be my neighbor and love as I love myself?" or "Which people are my neighbors that I should love?"

Luke 10:30

Jesus answered him and said
Jesus answers the man by telling a parable. Alternate translation: "In response, Jesus told him this story"

A certain man
This introduces a new character in the parable.

He fell among robbers, who
"He was surrounded by robbers, who" or "Some robbers attacked him. They"

stripped him of his belongings
"took everything he had" or "stole all his things"

half dead
This idiom means "almost dead."

Luke 10:31

By chance

This was not something that any person had planned.

a certain priest

This expression introduces a new person in the story, but does not identify him by name.

and when he saw him

"and when the priest saw the injured man." A priest is a very religious person, so the audience would assume that he would help the injured man. Since he did not, this phrase could be stated as "but when he saw him" to call attention to this unexpected result.

he passed by on the other side

It is implied that he did not help the man. Alternate translation: "he did not help the injured man but instead walked past him on the other side of the road"

Luke 10:32

a Levite ... the other side

The Levite served in the temple. He would be expected to help his fellow Jewish man. Since he did not, it may are helpful to state that. Alternate translation: "a Levite ... the other side and did not help him"

Luke 10:33

But a certain Samaritan

This introduces a new person in the story without giving his name. We know only that he was from Samaria.

a certain Samaritan

The Jews despised the Samaritans and would have assumed that he would not help the injured Jewish man.

When he saw him

"When the Samaritan saw the injured man"

he was moved with compassion

"he felt sorry for him"

Luke 10:34

bound up his wounds, pouring oil and wine on them

He would have put the oil and wine on the wounds first. Alternate translation: "he put wine and oil on the wounds and wrapped them with cloth"

pouring oil and wine on them

Wine was used to clean the wound, and oil was probably used to prevent infection. This can be stated. Alternate translation: "pouring oil and wine on them to help heal them"

his own animal

"his own pack animal." This was an animal that he used to carry heavy loads. It was probably a donkey.

Luke 10:35

two denarii

"two day's wages." "Denarii" is the plural of "denarius."

the host

"the innkeeper" or "the person who took care of the inn"

whatever extra you spend, when I return, I will repay you

This could be reordered. Alternate translation: "when I return, I will repay you whatever extra amount you spend"

Luke 10:36

Which of these three do you think ... robbers?

This could be written as two questions. Alternate translation: "What do you think? Which of these three men ... robbers?"

was a neighbor

"showed himself to be a true neighbor"

to him who fell among the robbers

"to the man whom the robbers attacked"

Luke 10:37

He said, "The one who showed mercy to him."

"The expert in the law said, 'The one who showed mercy to him.'"

Go and do the same

Here "do the same" refers to showing mercy to others. Alternate translation: "In the same way, go and show mercy to anyone else who needs help" or "In the same way, go and help everyone you can"

Luke 10:38

General Information:

Jesus comes to Martha's house, where her sister Mary listens to Jesus with great attention.

Now

This word is used here to mark a new event.

as they were traveling along

"as Jesus and his disciples were traveling along"

a certain village

This introduces the village as a new location, but does not name it.

a certain woman named Martha

This introduces Martha as a new character. Your language may have a way of introducing new people.

Luke 10:39

sat at the Lord's feet

This was the normal and respectful position for a learner at that time. Alternate translation: "sat on the floor near Jesus"

heard his word

This refers to everything that Jesus taught while at Martha's house. Alternate translation: "listened to the Lord teach"

Luke 10:40

overly busy

"very busy" or "too busy"

do you not care ... alone?

Martha is complaining that the Lord is allowing Mary to sit listening to him when there is so much work to do. She respects the Lord, so she uses a rhetorical question to make her complaint more polite. Alternate translation: "it seems like you do not care ... alone."

Luke 10:41

Martha, Martha

Jesus repeats Martha's name for emphasis. Alternate translation: "Dear Martha" or "You, Martha"

Luke 10:42

only one thing is necessary

Jesus is contrasting what Mary is doing with what Martha is doing. It may be helpful to make this explicit. Alternate translation: "the only thing that is really necessary is to listen to my teaching" or "listening to my teaching is more necessary than preparing a meal"

which will not be taken away from her

Possible meanings are 1) "and I will not take this opportunity away from her" or 2) "and she will not lose what she has gained as she was listening to me"

Chapter 20

Luke 20 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to show that it is poetry. The ULB does this with the poetry in 20:17, 42-43, which is from the Old Testament.

Special concepts in this chapter

Using questions to trap people

When Jesus asked the Pharisees who gave John the authority to baptize ([Luke 20:4](#)), they could not answer because any answer they gave would give someone a reason to say that they were wrong ([Luke 20:5-6](#)). They thought that they would be able to say that Jesus was wrong when they asked him if people should pay taxes to Caesar ([Luke 20:22](#)), but Jesus gave them an answer that they had not thought of.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Paradox

A paradox is a true statement that appears to describe something impossible. In this chapter, Jesus quotes a psalm that records David calling his son "Lord," that is, "master." However, to the Jews, ancestors were greater than their descendants. In this passage, Jesus is trying to lead his hearers to the true understanding that the Messiah will himself be divine, and that he himself is the Messiah. ([Luke 20:41-44](#)).

Luke 20:1

Connecting Statement:

The chief priests, scribes, and elders question Jesus in the temple.

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story.

in the temple

"in the temple courtyard" or "at the temple"

Luke 20:2

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 20:3

General Information:

Jesus responds to the chief priests, scribes, and elders.

He answered and said to them

"Jesus replied"

I will also ask you a question, and you tell me

The words "I will ... ask you a question" are a statement.

The words "you tell me" are a command.

Luke 20:4

Was it from heaven or from men

Jesus knows that John's authority comes from heaven, so he is not asking for information. He asks the question so the Jewish leaders will have to tell what they think to all who are listening. This question is rhetorical, but you will probably have to translate it as a question. Alternate translation: "Do you think John's authority to baptize people came from heaven or from men" or "Was it God who told John to baptize people, or did people tell him to do it"

from heaven

"from God." Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name "Yahweh." Often they used the word "heaven" to refer to him.

Luke 20:5

They reasoned
"They discussed" or "They considered their answer"

with themselves
"among themselves" or "with each other"

If we say, 'From heaven,' he
Some languages might prefer an indirect quote.
Alternate translation: "If we say that John's authority is from heaven, he"

From heaven
"From God." Jewish people avoided referring to God by his name "Yahweh." Often they used the word "heaven" to refer to him. See how these words are translated in [Luke 20:4]

he will say
"Jesus will say"

Luke 20:6

if we say, 'From men,'
Some languages might prefer an indirect quote.
Alternate translation: "if we say that John's authority is from men,"

stone us
"kill us by throwing stones on us." God's Law commanded that his people stone those of his people who mocked him or his prophets.

Luke 20:7

So they answered
"So the chief priests, scribes and elders answered." The word "so" marks an event that happened because of something else that happened first. In this case, they had reasoned with themselves ([Luke 20:5-6](#)), and they did not have an answer they wanted to say.

they answered that they did not know where it came from.
This could be stated as a direct quote. Alternate translation: "they said, 'We do not know where it came from.'"

where it came from
"where John's baptism came from." Alternate translation: "where John's authority to baptize came from" or "who authorized John to baptize people"

Luke 20:8

Neither will I tell you
"And I will not tell you." Jesus knew they were not willing to tell him the answer, so he responded in the same manner. Alternate translation: "Just as you will not tell me, I will not tell you"

Luke 20:9

General Information:
Jesus begins to tell a parable to the people in the temple courtyard.

rented it out to vine growers
"allowed some vine growers to use it in exchange for payment" or "allowed some vine growers to use it and pay him later." Payment might be in the form of money or a portion of the harvest.

vine growers
These are people who tend grape vines and grow grapes. Alternate translation: "grape farmers"

Luke 20:10

the appointed time
"the time they had agreed to pay him." This would have been at the harvest time.

of the fruit of the vineyard
"some of the grapes" or "some of what they produced in the vineyard." It could also refer to the things they made from grapes or the money they earned by selling the grapes.

sent him away empty-handed
An empty hand is a metaphor for "nothing." Alternate translation: "sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without the grapes"

Luke 20:11

beat him
"beat that servant"

treated him shamefully
"humiliated him"

sent him away empty-handed
Having an empty hand is a metaphor for having nothing. Alternate translation: "sent him away without paying him" or "sent him away without any grapes"

Luke 20:12

yet a third
"even a third servant" or "yet another servant." The word "yet" hints at the fact that the landowner should not have had to send the second servant, but he went beyond that and sent a third servant.

wounded him
"injured that servant"

threw him out
"threw him out of the vineyard"

Luke 20:13

What will I do?
This question emphasizes that the vineyard owner thought carefully about what he was going to do.
Alternate translation: "Here is what I will do:"

Luke 20:14

when the vine growers saw him
"when the farmers saw the owner's son"

Let us kill him
They were not asking permission. The said this to encourage each other to kill the heir.

Luke 20:15

They threw him out of the vineyard
"The vine growers forced the son out of the vineyard"

What then will the lord of the vineyard do to them?
Jesus uses a question to get his listeners to pay attention to what the owner of the vineyard will do.
Alternate translation: "So now, listen to what the lord of the vineyard will do to them."

Luke 20:16

Connecting Statement:
Jesus finishes telling his parable to the crowd.

May it never be
"May it never happen"

Luke 20:17

Connecting Statement:
Jesus continues teaching the crowd.

But Jesus looked at them
"But Jesus stared at them" or "But he looked straight at them." He did this to hold them accountable to understand what he was saying.

What is the meaning of that which is written: "The stone ... cornerstone?"
Jesus uses a question to teach the crowd. Alternate translation: "You should be able to understand that which is written: 'The stone ... cornerstone.'"

that which is written
"this scripture"

The stone that the builders rejected has become the cornerstone
This is the first of three metaphors in a prophecy from the book of Psalms. This one refers to the Messiah as if he were a stone that builders chose not to use, but that God made the most important stone.

The stone that the builders rejected
"The stone that the builders said was not good enough to use for building." In those days people used stones to build the walls of houses and other buildings.

the builders
This refers to the religious rulers who are rejecting Jesus as Messiah.

the cornerstone
"the chief stone of the building" or "the most important stone of the building"

Luke 20:18

Everyone who falls ... broken to pieces
This second metaphor speaks of people who reject the Messiah as if they fall over a stone and are injured.

will be broken to pieces
This is a result of falling onto the stone. It can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will break up into pieces"

the one on whom it falls
"the one that stone falls on." This third metaphor speaks about the Messiah judging those who reject him as if he were a large stone that would crush them.

Luke 20:19

sought to lay hands on him
In this verse, to "lay hands on" someone is to arrest that person. Alternate translation: "looked for a way to arrest Jesus"

in that very hour
"immediately"

they were afraid of the people
This is the reason that they did not arrest Jesus right away. The people respected Jesus, and the religious leaders were afraid of what the people might do if they arrested him. Alternate translation: "they did not arrest him because they were afraid of the people"

Luke 20:20

they sent out spies
"the scribes and chief priests sent spies to watch Jesus"

that they might find fault with his speech
"because they wanted to accuse Jesus of saying something bad"

to the rule and to the authority of the governor
"Rule" and "authority" are two ways of saying that they wanted the governor to judge Jesus. It can be translated with one or both expressions. Alternate translation: "so that the governor would punish Jesus"

Luke 20:21

Connecting Statement:
This is the beginning of the next event in the story. Some time has passed since Jesus was questioned in the temple by the chief priests. The spies are now questioning Jesus.

They asked him
"The spies asked Jesus"

Teacher, we know ... way of God
The spies were trying to deceive Jesus. They did not believe these things about Jesus.

we know
"we" refers only to the spies.

are not partial to anyone
Possible meanings are 1) "you tell the truth even if important people do not like it" or 2) "you do not favor one person over another"

but you teach the truth about the way of God
This is part of what the spies were saying that they knew about Jesus.

Luke 20:22

Is it lawful ... or not?
They hoped that Jesus would say either "yes" or "no." If he said "yes," then the Jewish people would be angry with him for telling them to pay taxes to a foreign government. If he said "no," then the religious leaders could tell the Romans that Jesus was teaching the people to break the Roman laws.

Is it lawful
They were asking about God's law, not about Caesar's law. Alternate translation: "Does our law permit us"

Caesar
Because Caesar was the ruler of the Roman government, they could refer to the Roman government by Caesar's name.

Luke 20:23

But Jesus understood their craftiness
"But Jesus understood how tricky they were" or "But Jesus saw that they were trying to trap him." The word "their" refers to the spies.

Luke 20:24

a denarius
This is a Roman silver coin worth a day's wages.

Whose image and name is on it?
Jesus uses a question to respond to those who were trying to trick him. Alternate translation: "Tell me, whose image and name do you see on it?"

image and name
"picture and name"

Luke 20:25

He said to them
"Then Jesus said to them"

Caesar
Here "Caesar" refers to the Roman government.

and to God
The word "give" is understood from the previous phrase. It can be repeated here. Alternate translation: "and give to God"

Luke 20:26

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of this event about the spies and the part of the story which began in Luke 20:1.

They were not able to find fault with what he had said
"The spies could not find anything wrong with what he said"

but marveling at his answer, they were silent
"but they were amazed at his answer and did not say anything"

Luke 20:27

General Information:

We do not know where this takes place, though it possibly takes place in the temple courtyard. Jesus is talking with some Sadducees.

the ones who say that there is no resurrection
This phrase identifies the Sadducees as being the group of Jews that say that no one would rise from the dead. It does not imply that some Sadducees believed that there is a resurrection and some did not.

Luke 20:28

if a man's brother dies, having a wife, and being childless
"if a man's brother dies when he has a wife but does not have children"

the man should take the brother's wife
"the man should marry his dead brother's widow"

raise up children for his brother
The Jews considered the first son born to a woman who married her dead husband's brother as if he were the son of the woman's first husband. This son inherited the property of his mother's first husband and carried on his name.

Luke 20:29

General Information:

The Sadducees tell Jesus a short story in verses 29-32. This is a story they made up as an example. In verse 33, they ask Jesus a question about the story they told.

There were seven brothers
This may have happened, but it is probably a story that they made up to test Jesus.

the first
"brother number one" or "the oldest"

died childless
"died without having any children" or "died, but did not have any children"

Luke 20:30

the second as well
The Sadducees kept the story short by not repeating many of the details. Alternate translation: "the second married her and the same thing happened" or "the second brother married her and died without having any children"

the second
"brother number two" or "the oldest brother who was still alive"

Luke 20:31

The third took her
"The third married her"

The third
"Brother number three" or "The oldest brother who was still alive"

and in the same way the seven also left no children and died
The speakers kept the story short by omitting details. Alternate translation: "in the same way the rest of the seven brothers married her and died without having any children"

the seven
"all seven of the brothers" or "each of the seven brothers"

Luke 20:32

General Information:

This page has intentionally been left blank.

Luke 20:33

Connecting Statement:

The Sadducees finish asking Jesus their question.

In the resurrection
"When people are raised from the dead" or "When dead people become alive again." Some languages have a way of showing that the Sadducees did not believe that there would be a resurrection, such as "In the supposed resurrection" or "When dead people are supposedly raised from the dead."

Luke 20:34

Connecting Statement:

Jesus begins to answer the Sadducees.

The sons of this age

"The people of this world" or "The people of this time."
This is in contrast with those in heaven or the people who live after the resurrection.

marry and are given in marriage

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "get married"

Luke 20:35

those who are regarded as worthy in that age

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people in that age whom God will consider to be worthy"

to receive the resurrection from the dead

"to be raised from the dead" or "to rise from death"

from the dead

From among all those who have died. The expression "the dead" describes all dead people together in the underworld. To receive resurrection from among them speaks of becoming alive again.

will neither marry nor be given in marriage

In that culture they spoke of men marrying women and women being given in marriage to their husband. This can also be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will not marry" or "will not get married." This is after the resurrection.

Luke 20:36

Neither can they die anymore

This is after the resurrection. Alternate translation: "They will not be able to die anymore"

are sons of God, being sons of the resurrection

"are children of God because he has brought them back from the dead"

Luke 20:37

Connecting Statement:

Jesus finishes answering the Sadducees.

But that the dead are raised, even Moses showed

The word "even" is here because the Sadducees might not have been surprised that some scriptures say that the dead are raised, but they did not expect Moses to have written something like that. Alternate translation: "But even Moses showed that dead people rise from the dead"

the dead are raised

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God causes the dead to live again"

in the place concerning the bush, where he calls the Lord

The implied information can be supplied. Alternate translation: "in the scripture about the burning bush, where he wrote about the Lord being"

the God of Abraham and the God of Isaac and the God of Jacob

"the God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob." They all worshiped the same God.

Luke 20:38

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Jesus explains how this story proves that people rise from the dead.

he is not the God of the dead, but of the living

These two phrases have similar meaning. They are used together for emphasis. Some languages have different ways of showing emphasis. Alternate translation: "the Lord is the God of living people only"

but of the living

"but the God of living people." Since these people died physically, they must still be alive spiritually. Alternate translation: "but the God of people whose spirits are alive, even though their bodies may have died"

because all live to him

"because in God's sight they all are still alive" or "because their spirits are alive in God's presence"

Luke 20:39

Some of the scribes answered

"Some of the scribes said to Jesus." There were scribes present when the Sadducees were questioning Jesus.

Luke 20:40

For they

It is unclear if this refers to the scribes, or the Sadducees, or both. It is best to keep the statement general.

they did not dare ask him any more questions
"they were afraid to ask him any more questions" or
"they did not risk asking him any more questions."
They understood that they did not know as much as
Jesus did, but they did not want to say that. This can be
made explicit. Alternate translation: "they did not ask
him any more tricky questions because they feared that
his wise answers would make them appear foolish
again"

Luke 20:41

General Information:
Jesus asks the scribes a question.

How do they say ... son?
"Why do they say ... son?" Jesus uses a question to make
the scribes think about who the Messiah is. Alternate
translation: "Let's think about them saying ... son." or "I
will talk about them saying ... son."

they say
The prophets, the religious rulers, and the Jewish
people in general knew that the Messiah was the son of
David. Alternate translation: "everyone says" or "people
say"

David's son
"King David's descendant." The word "son" is used here
to refer to a descendant. In this case it refers to the one
who would reign over God's kingdom.

Luke 20:42

The Lord said to my Lord
This is a quotation from the book of Psalms which says
"Yahweh said to my Lord." But the Jews stopped saying
"Yahweh" and often said "Lord" instead. Alternate
translation: "The Lord God said to my Lord" or "God
said to my Lord"

my Lord
David was referring to the Christ as "my Lord."

Sit at my right hand
To sit at the "right hand of God" is a symbolic action of
receiving great honor and authority from God.
Alternate translation: "Sit in the place of honor beside
me"

Luke 20:43

until I make your enemies your footstool
The Messiah's enemies are spoken of as if they were
furniture on which he would rest his feet. This was an

image of submission. Alternate translation: "until I
make your enemies like a footstool for you" or "until I
conquer your enemies for you"

Luke 20:44

David therefore calls the Christ 'Lord,'
In the culture of that time, a father was more respected
than a son. David's use of the title 'Lord' for the Christ
implies that he was greater than David.

so how is he David's son?
"so how can the Christ be David's son?" This can be a
statement. Alternate translation: "and this shows that
the Christ is not merely David's descendant"

Luke 20:45

Connecting Statement:
Jesus now directs his attention to his disciples and
speaks mainly to them.

Luke 20:46

Beware of
"Be on guard against"

who desire to walk in long robes
Long robes would show that they were important.
Alternate translation: "who like to walk around
wearing their important robes"

Luke 20:47

They also devour widows' houses
"They also eat up widows' houses." The scribes are
spoken of as if they were hungry animals that eat up
the widows' houses. The word "houses" is a synecdoche
for both where the widow lives and all the possessions
she puts in her home. Alternate translation: "They also
take away from widows all their possessions"

for a show they make long prayers
"they pretend to be righteous and make long prayers"
or "they make long prayers so that people will see
them"

Men like this will receive greater condemnation
"They will receive a more severe judgment." This can
be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God
will certainly punish them very severely"

